



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

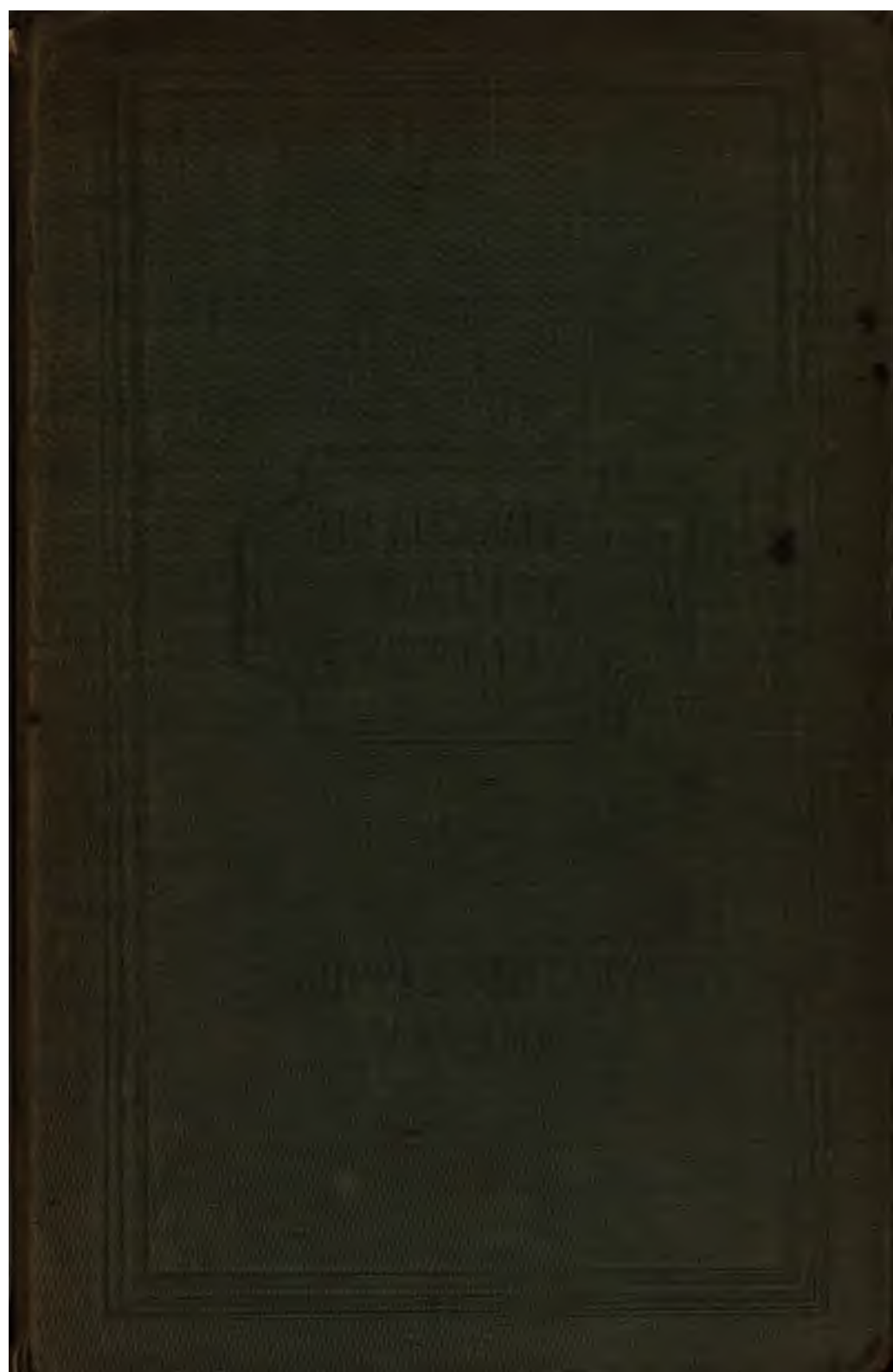
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600093797+







# LATIN EXERCISES,

(Supplementary Volume),

AS DICTATED BY

THE LATE JAMES MELVIN, LL.D.,

RECTOR OF THE GRAMMAR SCHOOL, ABERDEEN.

WITH

LATIN IDIOMS AND CONSTRUCTIONS,

BY

PETER CALDER, A.M.,

RECTOR, GRAMMAR SCHOOL, GRANTOWN.

EDINBURGH:

MACLACHLAN AND STEWART.

LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND COMPANY.

ABERDEEN: LEWIS AND JAMES SMITH.

MDCCCLVIII.

305. f. 23.



NEILL AND CO., PRINTERS, EDINBURGH.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE Exercises have all been carefully revised, and nothing appearing to present any difficulty, or require observation, has been omitted. Along with the local remarks are introduced collateral idioms and expressions calculated either to explain the passage or to receive explanation from it, and the various uses of words and synonyms are illustrated by examples in such variety as, it is hoped, will ensure clearness without prolixity. This form has been adopted in the expectation that the remarks will, by being given *ad loc.*, be found more convenient and practically useful than if they had been arranged or classified in a separate section of the volume.

The references with Roman characters are to the Exercises under which the particular words or expressions are previously treated, and those with § are to the corresponding Dissertations in the former volume.

GRAMMAR SCHOOL, GRANTOWN,

February 1858.





## LATIN EXERCISES.

### I.

TELEPHUS, Mysiæ rex, unam ex filiabus Priami, regis Trojani, in matrimonium duxit. Græcos, ad bellum Trojanum proficiscentes, vi armisque prohibere conatus est, quominus per fines suos transirent; sed, gravi vulnere accepto, ex acie excedere coactus est. Postea ab Achille, qui vulnus intulerat, sanatus tam gratum se præbuit ut Græcos Trojam comitaretur et contra socerum suum pugnaret.

1. *Mysiæ rex.*—*Mysiæ* is the word which particularly describes Telephus, and its position before *rex* gives it prominence and emphasis. The genitive usually precedes the governing noun. If, instead of the genitive of the substantive, the adjective be used, the substantive takes the first place, as *Bellum Trojanum*, *Populus Romanus*. To this, however, there is an exception; when the concurrence of two or more adjectives renders them emphatic by opposition or comparison, the adjective takes precedence of the substantive; as, the Greek and the Roman armies—*Græcus et Romanus exercitus*. The Roman army (*opposed to some other*) gained the day—*Romanus exercitus vicit*.
2. *Græcos proficiscentes.*—This is more elegant than *Græcos, quum proficiscerentur*. We should not say, *Quum Græci proficiscerentur, eos prohibere conatus est*, because the use of the pronoun might in many cases create ambiguity, it being possible to refer it to some other persons.
3. *Gravi vulnere accepto.*—More elegant than *quum grave vulnus accepisset*, or *quum grave vulnus acceptum esset*.
4. *Præbuit.* He showed that he was grateful—*Ostendit* (not *præbuit*, because of infinitive) *esse gratum*. He showed (pointed out to) me the way—*Mihi viam monstravit*. To show bravery—*Præstare virtutem*. To show mercy—*Uti misericordiâ*.
5. *Comitaretur.*—The Greeks were accompanied by Telephus—*Græcos Telephus comitatus est*. The Greeks went to Troy, accompanied by Telephus—*Græci Trojam, Telepho comitante, profecti sunt*. The following is grammatically correct:—*Ut, Græcos Trojam comitatus, pugnaret*; but then such importance is not laid on “accompanied” as is done by the finite mood, which indicates that he went with the *intention* or for the *purpose* of fighting.

## II.

Andriscus, cujus origo obscurissima fuisse dicitur, nobili Philippi nomine assumpto, rebellionem magnam excitavit in Macedonia, quæ eo tempore auctoritati Romanæ parebat. Macædonibus dixit jugum peregrinum grave esse et sine mora excuti debere; et sese ducem eorum fore qui liberi esse vellent. Tantum exercitum conscripsit, ut aliquamdiu cum Romanis ipsis contendere posset. Tandem victus captusque Romam vinctus missus est.

1. *Dicitur*—"Is said"—is always personal. It is said that Cyrus spoke, thus—*Cyrus ita locutus esse dicitur*. 2. *Assumpto*—1. 2. 3. *Parebat*.—The imperf., to denote continuance or duration. 4. *Dixit. Dico*—"To tell"—governs acc. and dat., as, He told me the story—*Mihi fabulam dixit*. In the present example the dat. is *Macedonibus*, and the acc. is the part of the sentence, *jugum peregrinum grave esse*. The acc., or what stands for the acc., will be discovered by asking the question, "What is or was told?" and what is the acc. with the act., becomes the nom. with the pass.; thus, The Macedonians were told that the foreign yoke was heavy—(What was told them? That the foreign yoke was heavy)—*Macedonibus dictum est jugum peregrinum grave esse*. *Macedones dicti sunt* means, "The Macedonians were said," not "were told." 5. *Peregrinum*—"Foreigner," in the sense of "a stranger in a country," is *peregrinus* or *advena*. When we speak of a "foreigner" in his own country, or abroad to us, the Lat. is *exterus* or *externus*. *Jugum peregrinum* is the "yoke imposed on them in their own country by foreigners." Some illustrious foreigners arrived at London—*Nonnulli peregrini illustres Londinum pervenerunt*. We gave the foreign prince a hospitable reception—*Principem peregrinum hospitio excepiimus*. A title conferred by a foreign prince—*Titulus ab externo principe delatus*. The French are the most polite of foreign nations—*Gentium externarum Galli sunt politissimi*. 6. *Grave esse*.—*Esse* is imperf. 7. *Vellent*.—Subjunctive, on account of its being part of the indirect statement introduced by *dixit*. 8. *Aliquamdiu*—"For a while, for some time, i.e., for a considerable time"—denotes duration, how long? *Aliquando*—"At one time, at some time or other"—refers to a point of time, when?—as, Alexander at one time wished Alexandria to be considered the metropolis of his empire—*Alexander Alexandriam aliquando pro capite imperii sui haberi voluit*. 9. *Vinctus captusque* agree with the subject of *missus est*.

## III.

Romani certiores facti sunt pestilentiam Velitris exarsisse, fere omnes incolas morbo insanabili esse correptos, eorumque qui in urbe mansissent, partem majorem intra unum mensem mortuam esse. Legati qui hunc nuncium attulerant, a Romanis petierunt ut urbem statim occuparent colonosque mitterent qui domos vastatas incolerent. Fames eo tempore Romæ sæviebat; et senatores, judicantes calamitatem suam levatum iri si civium numerus deminutus esset, promiserunt se partem populi Velitras sine mora missuros esse.

1. *Certiores facti sunt* introduces the indirect statement. 2. *Morbo* is here the abl. of instrument. To die of a disease—*Morbo mori*, where *morbo* is the abl. of cause. 3. *Occupo*—"To seize, to take and retain possession of, to occupy," as, He seized the kingly power—*Regnum occupavit*. *Comprehendo*—"To seize" (as with the hand); as, He seized the book—*Librum comprehendit*. 4. *Statim*. Immediate danger—*Præsens* or *instans periculum*. This was done by the immediate command of the king—*Præsenti imperio regis hoc factum est*. 5. *Qui domos incolerent* might be *ad domos incolendas, domos incultum*, or *inculturos*; but we should not say *ut domos incolerent*, for the subject of *incolerent* might then be understood to be the same as that of *mitterent*; thus, The king sent his son to Rome to conclude a peace—*Rex Romam filium misit qui pacem faceret*. But, *Rex Romam filium misit ut* (that he, the father) *pacem faceret*. 6. *Senatores judicantes*.—*Senatores* is the subject of *promiserunt*, and *judicantes* agrees with it. *Judicantes*, imperf.—while they judged they promised—might be, *quum judicarent*, &c. The senators judging promise—*Senatores judicantes*, (pres., and may be *quum judicent*) *promittunt*. 7. *Deminutus esset* is in this mood for two reasons: 1. The clause is hypothetical, § 52; 2. It is part of an indirect sentence. This tense is employed because the diminution must have taken place and been perfect before the calamity could be lightened. *Deminueretur* would imply that "the calamity would be lightened, if the number were being, were in course of being, diminished," which is evidently not the meaning intended. 8. The part of the sentence *Calamitatem . . . . deminutus esset* is the substance of what passed in the minds of the senators, and therefore is *indirect* as regards the historian.

## IV.

*Agricolæ Romani a Sabinis diu vexati erant, et adeo territi sunt ut ad solitum suum opus ire vix auderent, multi enim ex eorum numero, euntes aut redeuntes, asportati jam erant. Nonnullis valde mirum videri potest Consules non prohibuisse quominus hæ incursiones fierent, sed permisisse exercitui Sabino ut multos per menses in agro Romano maneret. Ii, tamen, quibus tota res est nota faciliè percipient quæ hujus moræ causa fuerit; et confitebuntur consules in culpâ non fuisse.*

1. *Agricolæ Romani*.—*Agricolæ* precedes *Romani*, because the *husbandmen* are here to be distinguished from the *other classes* of the Roman community. Were *Romani* to stand first, we should expect the *Roman husbandmen* to be contrasted with those of *some other nation*—I. 1. 2. *Diu*—"Long," of time; as, He staid long—*Diu Mansit*. *Longè*—"Long," of distance or extent, as, He is far distant—*Longè abest*. *Sententia longè alia*—Quite a different opinion. 3. *Audeo* requires a verb after it in the inf., whether the Eng. has one or not; as, He ventured through the fleet—*Per classem transire ausus est*. He ventured into the city—*Urbem ingredi ausus est*. He ventured out of the city—*Urbe egredi ausus est*. No trader durst venture thither—*Nullus mercator eò accedere ausus est*. He ventured on another battle—*Iterum pugnare ausus est*. They ventured in his sight—*In ejus conspectum venire ausi sunt*. I ventured on this though I was forbidden—*Ausus sum hoc facere etsi vetitus sum*. *Audeo* may

however govern the acc. of some general words, as, *ausus sum multa, talia, omnia, &c.* 4. *Nonnullis*—§ 30. 5. *Potest*.—The subject of *potest* is the clause *Consules non prohibuisse quominus . . . . .* *ferent.* 6. *Prohibuisse, permisisse*.—The syntax of *prohibeo*, when followed by another verb, varies with the nature of the object of "prevent." If the object be a person or free agent, *prohibeo* governs it in the acc., and the nom. to the next verb is the appropriate pronoun understood; thus, He prevented the enemy from making incursions—*Hostes prohibuit quominus incursiones facerent.* But if the object of "prevent," be inanimate, or not a free agent, it is not governed by *prohibeo*, but becomes the nom. to the following verb, as in the present exercise; to say *Prohibuit has incursiones quominus ferent* would be wrong. The angel prevented the flames from hurting them—*Angelus prohibuit quominus flammæ eos læderent.* The same principle holds with *Permitto* and *Impero*, which, however, govern the dat. He allowed (ordered) the soldiers to plunder the cities—*Militibus permisit (imperavit) ut urbes diriperent, i.e.,* he gave permission, orders, to the soldiers. But, He allowed, ordered, the cities to be plundered—*Permisit, imperavit, ut urbes diriperentur, i.e.,* he gave permission, orders, that the cities should be plundered. 7. *Quæ causa fuerit.* *Quid causæ fuerit* will not do, as it means "what was the amount or extent of the cause?" while the sense here is "what or which, among different possible causes, was the real or particular one?"—§ 38; 39, II. c.

## V.

Etrusci, quum se in acie Romanis pares non esse invenissent, inducias petierunt, quæ in duos annos iis datæ sunt. Priusquam hæ induciæ exierant, arma iterum sumpserunt, atque in agrum Romanum proficisci parabant, quum iis dictum est magnam Gallorum manum in Etruriæ finibus conspectam esse. Tantas inimicitias Etrusci in rempublicam Romanam gesserunt, ut novos hosce adversarios non repellerent, sed contra (adv.) eos rogarent ut secum ad Romam impugnandam irent. Galli, qui pauperes erant, pecuniam quæ oblata iis est libenter acceperunt; sed bene notum est eos eo tempore cum Romanis non pugnasse neque eorum urbi appropinquasse.

1. *Invenissent*—§ 39, IV. b. 2. *Esse*—§ 42, a. 3. *Priusquam* is here used with the indic., because the *truce*, or at least the *period it comprised*, did actually expire, although not *before* arms were taken up—§ 56. 4. *Exierant*.—Metaphorical. "To go out," when the place of departure is mentioned, is made by *Exire*; as, *Urbs exiit*—He went out of the city. When the place of departure is not mentioned, *prodire* is used; as, He went out to hunt—*Prodiit venatum*; He went out to meet them—*Iis obviam prodiit*. 5. *Agrum*—Territory; *Fines*—Territories or confines. *Agri*, opposed to *urbis*, is "the country" as opposed to "the city." 6. *Proficisci*—"To march, or proceed," in the sense of "begin to march, or set out." *Progredi*—"To proceed," i.e., "hold on" after having *already, or previously set out*. The Eng. "proceed" is variously rendered according to the sense and connection. He proceeded on his march—*Perrexit ire*. He proceeded (set about or began) to speak—*Agressus est loqui*. 7. *Quum*—§ 54. 8. *Tantas inimicitias, &c.*—The object of the inverted sen-

tence is to give emphasis to particular words by placing them in a prominent part of it. "So great an enmity" is more emphatic *before* than *after* the verb. 9. *Novos hosce adversarios*.—*Novos* takes the precedence, as being the most emphatic of the three. The suffix *ce* is added to *hos*, because it also is emphatic, although less so than *novos*. 10. *Iis*.—*Sibi* would not do here; for although "them" refers to the subject of the principal verb *acceperunt*, that verb does not in the least affect the clause containing the pronoun. The Gauls are not represented as speaking or acting in any way with reference to themselves; it is the *historian* that notices the circumstance of the money being offered *them*. Had the Eng. been "The Gauls said that they would accept the money that had been offered *them*," then the Gauls would allude to themselves, and the Lat. be—*Galli dixerunt se pecuniam quæ sibi oblata esset accepturos esse*.

## VI.

Achmeto, Turcarum imperatori, successit princeps cui nomen Mustaphæ fuit. Quum Saxonix Elector uni ex urbibus Turcicis hoc tempore appropinquasset, Mustapha, qui cum eo pugnare voluit, exercitum colligere coepit; sed priusquam contra hostem tam formidolosum proficisceretur, duces suos consulere statuit. Hi eum ita allocuti esse dicuntur; "Bone Mustapha, nos qui nullam adhuc injuriam ab Electore accepimus nec quid in animo habeat scimus, ei vix jure resistere possumus; sed ut nonnihil fiat, Lippam urbem, quæ a nobis deficit, obsideamus." Eò copix statim ductæ sunt; sed hæc obsidio imperatori labore multo constitit et parum commodi ei attulit.

1. *Achmeto successit princeps*.—In translation, the verb "succeed" undergoes a change from the pass. to the act., with a necessary change of *subject*, because *succedo*, governing the dat. in the act., cannot be used personally in the pass. In this and similar cases the relative Eng. order must be retained, e.g., we must not place *princeps* before *Achmeto*; and a reason for this here is the keeping the antecedent *princeps* near the relative *cui*. 2. *Succedo* takes the dat. of the person who is succeeded, and in with acc. of that to which one succeeds; as, He succeeded his father—*Patri successit*. He succeeded to the throne—*In regnum successit*. Combining both constructions—He succeeded his father on the throne—*Patri suo in regnum successit*. When "succeed" is used metaphorically, it is made by *procedo*; as, This stratagem succeeded—*Hic dolus processit*. 3. *Cui nomen Mustaphæ fuit*.—It might readily be supposed that *Mustapha* ought to agree with *nomen*—the name *Mustapha*—or be governed in gen. by that word—the name of *Mustapha*; but, instead of this, the Romans preferred putting the *proper name* in the dat., agreeing with the pronoun. My name is Philip—*Mihi nomen est Philippo*. The verb *Indo* also takes the same syntax; as, They gave me the name of Philip—*Mihi nomen Philippo indiderunt*. This construction is peculiar to *sum* and *indo*, and does not obtain with the simple *do*. They gave the city that name which it still retains—*Urbi id nomen dederunt quod adhuc retinet*. 4. *Appropinquasset* is generally construed with dat., sometimes with *ad* and acc. There is always implied in

it the idea of "nearness" to the place to which the advance is made. *Accedo*, which in the sense of "advance to" is construed with *ad*, sometimes with *dat.*, is used without any reference to "nearness." *Appropinquare urbi*—To approach or draw near the city; but *Accedere ad urbem*—To advance towards, or in the direction of; the city, though perhaps at a great distance from it. 5. *Cum eo pugnare* is capable of two meanings: either, To fight with him as an enemy, or, Along with him as an ally. In the former sense it is used here, and is nearly synonymous with *contra eum pugnare*. There is, however, this difference, that, while *contra* might imply that Mustapha merely fought against the elector's cause without perhaps meeting him, *cum* denotes that a personal encounter takes place, or that they fight as generals at the head of their respective armies. 6. *Præquam proficisceretur*.—*Præquam* is followed by the subj., because the historian does not intimate that *ever he marched*, and therefore leaves us uncertain whether he did or not—§ 56. 7. *Lippam urbem*.—The substs. signify the same thing; and *urbem* is, as it were, descriptive of *Lippam*. 8. *Defecit*. Henry set out to reduce a revolted city—*Henricus ad urbem quæ defecerat subigendam profectus est*. When applied to the sun or moon, *defecio* signifies "to be eclipsed." The sun is eclipsed—*Sol defecit*. The moon was eclipsed—*Luna defecerat* (lit. had failed). In the sense of "to fail," it governs the acc.; as, *Tempus me deficit*—Time fails me, i.e., Is not sufficiently long. But, *Tempus mihi deficit*—Time is wanting to me, i.e., I have not time at all.

## VII.

Clodius et Milo diu æmuli fuerant; acciditque ut ille, qui fortasse omnium qui tum Romæ erant flagitiosissimus fuit, ab hujus servis interficeretur. Tribuni plebis, existimantes hanc esse optimam motuum excitandorum occasionem, cadaver in Foro exposuerunt et inde ad curiam portatum quam maximâ pompâ comburendum sepeliendumque, curarunt. Incertum est num Milo ipse cædis particeps fuerit; sed bene notum est, eum etsi a Cicerone defensum, indignationi publicæ resistere non potuisse, et urbe cedere coactum esse.

1. *Accidit* is used because the event was *unfortunate*. *Contingit* is used of *fortunate* events, and *Evenit* either of *fortunate* or *unfortunate*. When the Eng. word "happen" is unemphatic, and may be turned into "by chance," it is expressed in Lat. by the aid of the adv. *fortè*; as, He happened to be at Rome, i.e., Was by chance at Rome—*Romæ fortè fuit*. They happened to have a boat at the time—*Cymbam eo tempore fortè habebant*. In the present Exercise "happened" cannot be turned into "by chance," for it was no chance—Clodius was slain designedly. 2. *Ille . . . hujus*—§ 15. 3. *Flagitiosissimus omnium qui*—§ 34. 4. *Exposuerunt*—They exposed, i.e., Laid out to view. They exposed the army to danger—*Exercitum periculo objecerunt* (cast in the way of, threw against); or, *Exercitum in periculum adduxerunt*. 5. *Portatum*—"Caused it, being carried, to be burned." 6. *Curia* is the "senate-house," the place where the senators held their meetings. *Senatus* is "the senate," the body of senators. 7. *Comburo*—To burn, consume with fire. *Incendo*—To burn, set on fire. *Ardeo*—To burn, be on fire. *Flagro*—To burn,

blaze. 8. *Curo*—"To cause," is followed by the part. in *dus* as here, and can be used in this way only when the verb following it is Passive. *Efficio*—"To cause," is followed by *ut*. 9. *A Cicerone*.—*A* is necessary, Cicero being the principal agent; but, Defended by his shield—*Olypeo defensus*, *Olypeo* being the instrument. 10. *Cedo* is followed also by *ab*, *ex*, or *de*. When it signifies "yield, give way to one," it governs the dat.; as, He yielded to the enemy—*Hosti cessit*. They yielded the city, *i.e.*, Gave up the city—*Urbem cesserunt*. I will not yield my right—*Meo jure non cedam*, *i.e.*, Will not depart from it; but if the meaning be, "I will not yield it to another, the Lat. is—*Meum jus non cedam*.

## VIII.

Anno mundi ter millesimo octingentesimo quinquagesimo quarto, Antiochus Sidetes, conscripto maximo exercitu, contra Parthos profectus est; quanquam difficile est dictu quid hi fecissent quod ei displiceret. Bene notum est eum in hac expeditione interemptum esse; sed historici antiqui, a quibus narrata ejus historia est, tantopere inter se discrepant, in describendâ mortis ejus causâ, ut sit omnino incertum quomodo ille perierit. Nonnulli dicunt eum manu suâ cecidisse; alii autem affirmant eum esse a militibus suis desertum atque ab hostibus captum, interfectum ab iis esse.

1. *Dictu*.—The subject of "is difficult" is the clause "what they had done, &c.," and "to say" is = "to be said or told." If "to say" were part of the subject, *i.e.*, if the *saying* or *doing* itself be difficult, the inf. and not the supine is used, as *Difficile est dicere*—to say is difficult. But if *something spoken of* be difficult, the supine is used; as, It is difficult to say what this is—*Difficile est dictu quid hoc sit*, *i.e.*, What this is, is difficult to be told—§ 45.
2. *Fecissent*.—The pluperf., although the present *difficile est* immediately precedes; but it must be observed, that the time of *fecissent* is so far dependent on *profectus est*, and is not, therefore, regulated by *difficile est*. He marched against them, although it is difficult (just now) to say what they had done (prior to the time of his marching).
3. *Displiceret* is potential—Which might displease.
4. *In hac expeditione*. To go on an expedition—*Ire in expeditionem*.
5. *In describendâ causâ*—or, *describendâ causâ*, as "the abl. of manner."
6. *Quomodo*—"How, in what manner?" *Quam* means "how, to what extent, or degree?" and is therefore inadmissible here.
7. *Perierit*—§ 39.
8. *Nonnulli* is intended to mean that "a few, not many," say that he perished by his own hand, while "others" affirm, &c. If "some" had been used in the sense of "one party," and "others" in the sense of "another party," *alii dicunt*—*alii affirmant* would have been written.
9. *Manu*—abl. of instrument.
10. *Autem*, in signification, stands between *et* and *sed*, and is used here because the two assertions, instead of being *coupled*, are rather *opposed*—§ 30.

## IX.

Anno Romæ quingentesimo vigesimo octavo, multi ex iis Gallis qui Gæsætæ appellati sunt, in Italiam subito perven-



erunt, et Æmilius Consul Ariminum magno cum exercitu missus est, ut eos quominus progredierentur prohiberet. Romani tamen alio duce alioque exercitu sibi opus esse viderunt; ideoque uni ex prioribus ducibus suis dixerunt se imperium militare ei iterum commissuros et quinquaginta millia peditum et quatuor millia equitum ei daturus esse, eâ conditione ut in Etruriam statim iret Gallisque, si ibi inventi essent, resisteret. Quis hicce dux fuerit, nobis est ignotum qui eam Livii partem non habemus in quâ ejus nomen narratum esset; sed ex Polybio scimus eum bellum non bene administrasse.

1. *In Italiam*—Acc., motion into being implied. He arrived at Rome in Italy—*Romam in Italiam pervenit*—Motion into Italy and to Rome.
2. *Ut prohiberet*—§ 51. 3. *Eos prohiberet*—IV. 6. 4. *Progredieretur*—V. 6. 5. *Iterum*—"Again, a second time." Pompey was consul a second time—*Pompeius consul iterum fuit*. I tell you again and again—*Tibi iterum atque iterum* (or *iterumque*) dico. 6. *Commissuros esse*.—*Credo* is used in the same sense. Compare the idiom in such expressions as, They supplied the soldiers with arms—*Arma militibus suppeditarunt*. They threatened me with death—*Mortem mihi minati sunt*. They presented me with a sword—*Gladium mihi donarunt*, which may be also—*me gladio* (abl.) *donarunt*. 7. *Ea conditione ut*—§ 51. 8. *Si inventi essent*—§ 52 and III. 7. 9. *Fuerit*—§§ 38, 39.

## X.

Pompeius, victo Domitio captoque Hiarbâ, putavit se ob has res gestas triumpho ornari debere; sed Sylla, qui crescenti ejus famæ invidebat, dixit præmium, quod Pompeius postularet, multo majus quam pro meritis ejus esse; et præterea, hunc honorem ex consuetudine populi Romani, non posse ei deferri, qui nec dictator nec consul fuisset, et tantum quatuor et viginti annos natus esset: Sylla ipse tum provectus ætate fuit; et Pompeius ad hoc respiciens, dicitur verbis iis usus esse quæ ex eo tempore in proverbium venerunt. "Luci Sylla" inquit, "frustra mihi resistis, nam homines orientem potius quam occidentem solem venerantur."

1. *Debere*—§ 42 a. 2. *Postularet*.—Indirect clause. 3. *Esse*.—Imperf.
4. *Præterea*—"Besides," being the adv. Epaminondas led his soldiers, and besides (adv.) fought with his own hand—*Epaminondas milites suos duxit, et, præterea, sua manu pugnavit*. Epaminondas, besides (conj.) leading his soldiers, fought with his own hand—*Epaminondas, præterquam quod milites suos duxit, sua manu pugnavit*. 5. *Ei*—"One," could not be made by *unus*, or any such word; for it is equivalent to "a person," or "him"—§ 28. 6. *Deferri*.—*Deferro* and *Tribuo* govern the acc., and dat., as, *Defero, tribuo, honorem ei*; but *Confero* takes the acc. and in with acc., as *Confero honorem in eum*. 7. *Provectus ætate*. He died at the advanced age of

110—*Profecta ætate centum et decem annorum mortuus est.* 8. *Ex eo tempore*—"Since." Since the victory—*Post victoriam.* Since Caius had died—*Postquam Caius mortuus est.* Twenty years have elapsed since I saw him—*Viginti anni effluerunt ex quo* (contracted for *ex eo tempore quo*) *eum vidi.* "Since"—"seeing that" is made by *quum.* Since we have obtained the victory, we may rest—*Quum victoriam adepti simus, requiescere possumus.* 9. *It is* is used to introduce the sentence with emphasis, particularly on *vain*, and this emphasis is maintained in the Lat. by placing *frustra* first in the clause. 10. *Resistis* governs only the one case; accordingly it cannot be introduced into such an expression as, He opposed himself to me—*Se mihi opposuit.* But, He opposed the consul's authority—*Consulis auctoritati resistit.* He opposed his own authority to that of all others—*Auctoritati omnium aliorum suam opposuit.* Without opposition—*Nullo resistente.* To oppose each other—*Obrectare inter se.* To be opposed by one—*Habere aliquem sibi adversarium.* These generals were opposed by Marcus—*His ducibus Marcus repugnavit.* I will oppose your receiving this—*Obstabo ne hoc accipias.*

## XI.

Scipio, quum copias suas in Africam exposuisset aliquot dierum quietem iis dedit, tumque urbem Uticam versus profectus est. Carthaginienses, quum eum castra mille passus ab hac urbe posuisse audivissent, statuerunt, si fieri posset, eum prohibere quominus longius progrediretur. Hasdrubal ad patriæ auxilium properare iussus est; et quoad hic ~~pro~~ *per-* venisset, Hannoni imperatum est ut hostium motus observaret. Hannonis copiæ tamen tam paucæ fuerunt ut Scipio miraretur eas exercitui Romano opponi et irridens interrogaret ubi milites essent quorum præsidio Carthaginienses confiderent.

1. *Scipio, quum exposuisset.*—Were we to place *quum* before *Scipio*, the verb "gave" would be left without a subject. The intransitive verb "to land" is *appello*. 2. *In Africam*—Motion into. 3. *Profectus est*—He marched his forces—*Duxit copias.* 4. *Uticam versus* is sometimes more strongly expressed *ad Uticam versus.* *Versus* of itself does not imply that the place is reached. *Ad* alone implies that it is reached. 5. *Mille passus.*—Acc. of distance or measure. 6. *Si fieri posset.*—Subj. to express doubt or uncertainty. 7. *Eum prohibere*—IV. 6. *Progrediretur*—V. 6. 8. *Quominus* (ut *ed minus*) is found after verbs of *hindering* and expressions having that signification, as *Prohibeo, impedio, deterreo, recuso, obito, &c.*, together with such as *Stat per me, fit per me, &c.* They prevent me from speaking—*me prohibent quominus loquar.* I was the cause of his not being sent—*Per me stetit quominus mitteretur.* For *quominus* we not unfrequently find *ne*, and when a negative precedes, *quin*. The foregoing sentence may therefore be—*Me prohibent ne loquar*, and with a negative—They do not prevent me from speaking—*Me non prohibent quin loquar.* 9. *Pervenisset.*—*Perveniret* would mean "till he should be arriving"—III. 7. 10. *Imperatum est.*—Impersonal in pass., because it governs dat. in act., Signifying "to demand," it governs acc. and dat.; as, He demanded hostages from these states—*Obsides his civitatibus imperavit.* 11. *Observaret.*—*Vigilo*, "to watch"

intransitively. 12. *Opponi*—"should be opposed" is imperf.= "were opposed"—X. 10. 13. *Irridens*.—Adv. "Jeeringly" made by participle; compare "Insultingly"—*Insultans*. 14. *Confident*.—Indirect clause introduced by *interrogarent*.

## XII.

*Exercitus quem Hasdrubal secum a Carthagine duxit, parvus fuisse dicitur; sed postquam in Italiam pervenit, quum multi Insubres Liguresque sese ei junxissent, tam formidabilis factus est ut non solum ipsi Carthaginenses ei non posse facile resisti putarent, sed etiam Romani eorumque socii in eâdem sententia esse viderentur, præliumque detrectare vellent. Porcius, cujus de virtute dubitari non potuit, dixit copias Romanas, quæ tam paucæ essent quarumque vires longo itinere essent exhaustæ, in aciem statim prodire non debere sed breve tempus iis ad se recreandas dandum esse. Fortis consul, tamen, dixit, quo diutius Romani inertes manerent, eo ferociorem hostem fore; moramque unius diei exitiosam esse posse.*

1. *Duxit*.—Because "brought" is here="led." *Fero*—"I bring"="I carry." The same distinction holds between the compounds. 2. *Junxissent*.—*Jungo* takes acc., and dat.; *Conjungo* rather acc., and cum with abl. 3. *Quum* must precede *Insubres* and *Ligures*, because they form the subject of *junxissent*, there being no verb following to which they must or can be the subject, as in XI. 1. 4. *Resisti*.—§ 47. 5. *Sententia* is "an opinion" formed after mature deliberation.—*Opinio*—"An opinion" adopted as it were at once and without examination. I have a high opinion of him—*Magnam de eo opinionem habeo*. I have a high opinion of their bravery—*Magnam eorum virtutis opinionem habeo*. 6. *Viderentur*.—Opposed to *putarent*, and therefore in the same mood. 7. *Dubitari*. I doubt your courage—*De tuâ virtute dubito*. 8. *Dixit* makes the rest of the sentence indirect. 9. *Copias Romanas*.—I. 1. 10. *Quo diutius*.—§ 63. 11. *Hostem fore*.—He said that the enemy would be, and that the delay, &c.

## XIII.

*Milcolumbus tertius Macbetho in regnumoticum successit et Sconæ in sellâ marmoreâ rex coronatus est VII. Kal. Mai. anno mundi quinquies millesimo trigesimo nono. Post tumultus varios compressos, secum cogitare cœpit, quo majore severitate jam usus esset, eo crebriores et periculosiores turbas fuisse; ideoque nobiles suos in regiam ad se venire jussos ita allocutus est: "Vos, qui mihi semper suadetis ut crudelitatem exerceam, non potestis non videre quam inutile consilium vestrum sit, magnamque adhuc esse rebellandi cupiditatem; experiamur tandem quid clementia efficere possit, persuasum enim habeo, me, si benignior fuisset, plures amicos, quorum fidelitate confidere possem, paucioresque inimicos, habiturum fuisse."*

1. *Successit*—VI. 1, 3. 2. *Rex coronatus est*—Like the pass. of a verb of "naming." 3. *Kal. Mai*—§ 8. 4. *Quinquies*—§ 6. 5. *Post varios tumultus compressos* may be *postquam varios tumultus compressit*. 6. *Quo majore*—§ 63. 7. *Periculosiores* coupled to *crebriores*, the sign of the comparative not requiring to be repeated in Eng. 8. *Jussos*.—He addressed his nobles, *being ordered* &c. 9. *Ita*—"Thus, as follows." *Sic*—"Thus, as goes before." This distinction is generally observed. 10. *Suadetis*. He recommended the matter to me—*Mihi rem suavit*. He advised the king to the contrary—*Regi contraria suavit*. 11. *Quam*—VIII. 6. 12. *Non potestis non videre*, or, *non potestis quin videatis*. 13. *Sit, possit*—§ 38. 14. *Quid*—§ 24. 15. *Habeo persuasum*—I hold it as a thing persuaded (to me,) or of which I am convinced—§ 51. c. He persuaded the people to the law—*Legem populo persuavit*. 16. *Si*—§ 52. 17. *Inimicus*—"A private enemy; or, an enemy among private persons." *Hostis*—"A public enemy, or one of a foreign nation."

## XIV.

Quum vobis dixerim quomodo Milcolumbus allocutus sit nobiles suos, quos ad crudelitatem nimis propensos esse putabat, jam exemplum dabo eorum quæ secuta sunt. Conjuratione patefactâ, conjuratum arcessi jussit et postquam significavit, quicumque talia tentaret, dignum eum morte esse, ita locutus esse dicitur: "Homo perfide, nesciebas quid faceres; Ego et tu jam soli sumus; utrique nostrum gladius hic est; tuum stringe et virtute me vincere conare; sed tam turpis ne sis ut scelere me interficias." Conjuratus, quum ad regis pedes procubisset et misericordiam implorasset, impunitus dimissus est; et historici nostrates narrant regem ita amorem eorum qui eum antea odissent sibi conciliasse, et postea ab omnibus insidiis liberum vixisse.

1. *Quum dixerim* . . . . . *dabo*—§ 39, II. c. 2. *Quomodo*—VIII. 6. 3. *Allocutus sit*—§ 39, II. b. 4. *Eorum quæ*—§ 24. 5. *Conjuratum*.—The only good word for "a conspirator." 6. *Quicumque*.—§ 23. 7. *Tentaret*.—Subj. in indirect clause. 8. *Utrique*—§ 22. 9. *Nostrum*.—§ 9. 10. *Ne*.—"Not," with the imperative, is always made by *ne*. 11. *Impunitus*—Unpunished. But when a person is said to do anything "with impunity," *impune* (adv.) is used; as, He laid waste the country with impunity—*Regionem impune vastavit*. 12. *Nostrates*—§ 18.

## XV.

Poetæ, qui de Philoctete, Pæantis et Demonassæ filio, locuti sunt, finxerunt eum Herculis armigerum fuisse, et sagittas quæ in veperato Hydræ sanguine tinctæ essent ab eo accepisse. Pes ejus vel casu unius ex his sagittis vel morsu serpentis vulneratus est, et tam injucundum odorem vulnus hocce creavit, ut Græci quibuscum Trojam ibat eum a se removerent, atque in Lemno insula relinquerent. Hic permissum ei est

ut maneret quoad inventum est Trojam sine eo capi non posse. Tum missi sunt Ulysses et Diomedes qui eum ad castra Græca adducerent; sed non sine summa difficultate persuasum ei est ut eos comitaretur, neque enim temporis longinquitas effecerat ut quam malè tractatus esset, oblivisceretur.

1. *Finnerunt*.—What follows is indirect. 2. *Sanguine*. *Sanguis*—"Blood," as it is in the body. *Cruor*—"Blood, or gore," as thickened after it is shed. 3. *Lemno insula*—V. 7. 4. *Qui* = ut ii—§ 51. 5. *Adducerent*—XII. 1. 6. *Sed non sine*, &c.—In this form the sentence is very emphatic—X. 9. 7. *Neque enim*—"For not"—is far more elegant than *nam temporis longinquitas non*. "And yet not" is similarly expressed—*neque tamen*; as, *And yet* he did not speak—*Neque tamen locutus est*. 8. *Effecerat*—VII. 8.

## XVI.

Pyrrhus, postquam ex Italia rediit, urbibus Macedoniæ potitus est; et per speciem ulciscendi injuriam Lacedæmonio illatam, totam Peloponnesum subigere tentavit. Postea, quum Argos urbem ingredi conaretur, interemptus est a muliere, quæ, quum eum in unicum filium suum, a quo leviter vulneratus erat, converti videret, magnam tegulam ambabus manibus correptam e tecto domûs ubi stabat, quantâ vi potuit in regis caput dejecit. Bene dictum est Pyrrhum fortem gnævumque fuisse, sed alias gentes vincere cupientem, penitus oblitum esse quid populo suo deberetur.

1. *Pyrrhus, postquam*.—*Pyrrhus* is made the *subject* of the principal verb *potitus est*, the pronoun being understood with the subordinate *rediit*. In this respect the Lat. differs from the Eng.—XI. 1. 2. *Totam*—§ 9. 3. *Postea*.—The Eng. "after," as a preposition before a noun, is *post*; as an adv., equivalent to "afterwards," *postea*; and when it is = "after the time that, or at which," *postquam*. After the battle—*Post prælium*. But with such words as *annus*, *dies*, "after" is made by the adv., and *annus*, *dies*, put in "the abl. of time;" as, He returned *after* many days—*Multis post (adv.) diebus rediit*. After seven years—*Septem post annis*, i.e., Seven years *after*, *afterwards*. I came to Rome, and *after* (afterwards) returned to Ardea—*Romam veni, et postea Ardeam rediit*. I returned to Ardea *after* (after the time that, or at which) I came to Rome—*Ardeam rediit, postquam Romam veni*. After coming he did so—*Postquam venit, ita fecit*. 4. *Ingressi*.—The diff. of usage between *ingredior* and *ineo* is, that the former generally retains the literal signification; the latter, on the other hand, the metaphorical; as, *Ingressus est urbem*—*Societatem, fœdus iniit*. 5. *Suum*—§ 11. 6. *Ambabus*.—With both her hands *together*—§ 22. *Uterque* would not do here. 7. *Quantâ vi potuit* is an abbreviation for *tantâ vi quantâ potuit*, similar to *quo tempore* for *eo tempore quo*—§ 32.

## XVII.

Gorgias, celebris orator, Leontinis in Siciliâ insulâ natus est. A civibus suis missus est ut auxilium Atheniensium contra Syracusanos peteret; præstantique ejus eloquentia Atheniensibus persuasum est ut expeditionem eam susciperent quæ tam infelix fuit, quamque Cicero eorum gloriæ et potestati exitiosam fuisse dicit. Tantus ei honor a civitatibus Græciæ habitus est, ut statuam auream ei Delphis ponerent; quam auctores quidam affirmant eum ex arte sua tantum pecuniæ confecisse ut hoc suo sumptu faceret. Empedoclis discipulus fuit, magister autem Socratis et aliorum. Amplius centum annos vixit; mortuusque est quadringentis annis ante Christum natum, anno primo Olympiadis nonagesimæ quintæ.

1. *Persuasum est*—§ 47, 51. A report prevails—*Fama tenet*. "Prevail"—"to overcome"—is *vinco*. 2. *Quam*.—Acc. before inf. Cicero says that *which* was, &c. 3. *Quidam*—§ 30. 4. *Autem*.—To express contrast between *discipulus* and *magister*—VIII. 10. 5. *Ut faceret*—"That he did." 6. *Amplius, minus, circiter* do not affect the construction of a sentence, although they do the sense. One hundred men were sent—~~hæc~~ *homines missi sunt*. Upwards of (more than, or above) a hundred men were sent—*Amplius centum homines missi sunt*. So, *Minus, circiter centum homines*, &c. The king died about the year 1500—*Rex anno circiter millesimo quingentesimo mortuus est*. 7. *Quadringentis annis*.—Time when in the abl.

## XVIII.

Anno Romæ quadringentesimo octogesimo quarto, Caricini quorum agros Romani sæpe vastaverant, quum Samnitium copias collectas esse et contra Romam proficisci audiissent, auxilium iis ferre statuerunt. Romani, exercitu celeriter conscripto, harum gentium conjunctarum impetum repulerunt, atque invicem incursiones multas in latos earum fines fecerunt. Caricini tamen non facile victi sunt; nam in urbe sua obsessi, toti potestati Romanæ tamdiu restiterunt, ut ipsi consules perseverantiam eorum admirarentur et urbem capi non posse putarent. Tandem, transfugæ auxilio, Romani victores fuerunt; et incredibile est quam superbe sibi de hoc successu gratulati sint.

1. *Quadringentesimo*—§ 5, c. 2. *Collectas esse, et proficisci*.—Pluperf. and Imperf. 3. *Caricini, quum audiissent, statuerunt*—XL 1, XII. 3, XVI. 1. 4. *Transfugæ auxilio*.—This form of expression makes the deserter the *principal* agent in obtaining the success. *Transfugæ adjuvante* would ascribe to him only a *secondary* part. Accordingly, when we have "by the assistance of God," we should always make it, *Dei auxilio*—not *Deo adjuvante*.

## XIX.

Roma pacem in Asia facere voluit, ut in Græcia fecerat; et Gallogræci soli eam turbare posse visi sunt. Legiones Romanæ ipso nomine ferocis hujus et potentis nationis terribilæ sunt; et consuli, qui copiis præerat, necessarium visum est earum virtutem longâ oratione excitare. Interrogavit num fama, quam Gallogræci consecuti essent, terrorem exercitui Romano injicere deberet. Dixit alias nationes, luxuriâ enervatas tremere posse; sed milites Romanos, qui adhuc nunquam victi essent, non debere ab iis superari qui staturâ formidolosiores quam gladiis essent. "Nequaquam miror," inquit, "Cares iis resistere non potuisse; sed nos qui sæpius de iis quam de aliâ ullâ gentē triumphavimus, ii non sumus qui eorum arma timeamus."

1. *Voluit*.—*Volo* takes sometimes the bare inf., sometimes the acc. and inf., and sometimes *ut* with subj. It may have the perf. inf., but never the fut. I should wish to make you a king—*Velim te regem facere* They wished that another should be made king—*Voluerunt alium fieri regem*. I should wish you to make a king—*Velim ut tu regem facias*. I wished that these books should be sent—*Hos libros mitti volui*; or, *ut hi libri mitterentur volui*. 2. *Ipso nomine*—The name itself. 3. *Præerat*. *Præesse*—"To have the command, superintendence, be over." *Præficere*—"To give the command, superintendence, set over." They gave him the command of the forces—*Eum copiis præfecerunt*. He got the command of the forces—*Copiis præfectus est*. He superintended the building of the bridge—*Ponti faciendo præfuit*. They gave him the charge (set him over) of the building of the bridge—*Eum ponti faciendo præfecerunt*. 4. *Num*.—"If" being here equivalent to "whether." *Num* implies that the answer "no" is expected to the question. *An*, or the enclitic *ne* (*famane*), would merely imply that information was asked for. Had the Eng. been "He asked if the fame ought not, &c," the Lat. would be—*Interrogavit annon (or nonne) fama, &c.*, where the answer "yes" is expected. 5. *Interrogavit*. *Dixit*.—Both sentences are indirect. 6. *Staturâ, gladiis*, abl. of cause. 7. *Is*—§ 1. b. 8. *Qui timeamus*—§ 50. 4. a. 9. *Timeo eum*—I am afraid of him, *lest he do me harm*. *Timeo ei*—I am afraid of him, *lest he come by harm*.

## XX.

Mirum videri potest, Romulum, quum Tatium regni socium haberet, amorem belli deposuisse et in plerisque factis suis paci publicæ studuisse. Nequaquam certum est utrum timerit ne gloriæ suæ Tatius particeps esset, an necessitas postulaverit ut totum tempus in civitate regendâ consumeretur. Vix fieri potuit ut concordia perpetua inter duos hosce reges esset. Anno sexto postquam communiter regnare coperunt, Tatius interemptus est; et suspicio fuit, Romulum, quum ejus mortem ultus non esset, cædis conscius fuisse.

1. *Socium*. *Socius*—"An associate, companion, ally, or partner" in any work or undertaking. *Comes* (from *cum eo*)—"a companion, fellow-traveller." *Sodalis* (from *sedeo*)—"a companion at meals."  
 2. *Deposuisse*. *Depono*—"I lay down or aside," and desist from. *Sepono*—"I lay aside or past" for future use. 3. *Plerisque*—§ 2.  
 4. *Utrum* . . . . *an*—§ 57. 5. *Timuerit*. After verbs of "fearing" that (*lest*) is made by *ne*, that not by *ut*. I am afraid that he will come—*Timeo ne veniat*. I am afraid that he will not come—*Timeo ut veniat*. The *inf.* is quite common with them. They were afraid to begin the battle—*Prælium incipere timebant*.  
 6. *Potuit fieri ut*—§ 51. 7. *Postquam*—XVI. 3. *Conscium*—"Privy"—governs the *gen.* as here. He was privy to the conspiracy—*Conjuracionis conscius fuit*. In the sense of "conscious" it takes *gen.* and *dat.*, as, I am conscious of my fault—*Mihi peccati conscius sum*. And with a verb following—He is conscious of having erred—*Conscius est sibi se errasse*.

## XXI.

Vulgata est fama Etruscos et Samnites fœdus iniisse et copias conscribere quas contra Romanos ducere in animo haberent. Roma igitur negligens non fuit; eique primæ curæ fuit eos consules deligere quibus tanti belli administratio tutò committi posset. Omnium oculi in Fabium conversi sunt, qui tamen adeo non honorem cupivit ut consulatum non modo non peteret sed etiam oblatum rejiceret. "Cur," inquit, "mihi imponatur onus gravius quam quod ferre possum? Is vigor quem quondam habui, jam abiit; sentioque mihi tempus esse quiescendi. Non desunt juvenes qui mihi succedant; neque is sum qui eorum gloriæ invidiam."

1. *Iniisse*—XVI. 4. 2. *Haberent*—Indirect statement, forming part of the report. *In animo haberent*; or, *in animo esset*. 3. *Eos quibus*.—§ 33. 4. *Committi*.—IX. *Posset*—Potential. 5. *Omnium oculi*.—Similar to this in idiom is the following—A voice was heard exclaiming—*Vox exclamantis audita est*, i.e. the voice of one exclaiming was heard. 6. *So far from*, and *far from* have both a literal and metaphorical usage. Literal—The river is far from the mountain—*Flumen a monte longè distat*. The army is so far from the city, that the messenger cannot return before the third day—*Exercitus ab urbe tam longè distat ut nuncius ante diem tertium redire non possit*. Metaphorical—I am far from thinking so—*Nequaquam* (or *minime*) *ita puto*. They were not far from perishing—*Haud multum abfuit quin perirent*. So far was I from being afraid, that I did not know there was danger—*Adeo non timebam* (or *tantum abfuit ut timerem*) *ut periculum esse nescirem*. 7. *Rejiceret*. *Rejicio*—"I refuse (what is offered)." *Denego*—"I refuse (what is asked of me)." *Recuso*—"I refuse (either what is offered or asked)," is the general word used with *inf.*, in which case it is frequently nearly equivalent to *nolo*. 8. *Imponatur*—"Should be imposed," being present. Compare XI. 12. 9. *Negue*—XV. 10. *Is sum qui*—§ 1, 50.



## XXII.

Alexander, anno ante Christum trecentesimo trigesimo secundo Ægyptum invasit quæ diu Persis paruerat. Dum hic morabatur, Alexandriam urbem condidit, quam aliquando pro capite imperii sui haberi voluit, quæque ad hunc usque diem nomen ejus gerit. Successu elatus, honores divinos sibi jam vindicavit; atque inter sacerdotes ipsos inventi sunt homines tam turpes ut eum in hac re adularentur fidemque ei facerent eum Jovis Ammonis filium esse. Multi ex ejus militibus defatigatione et siti mortui sunt, ad ficti hujus dei templum proficiscentes, quod septem dierum iter ab Alexandria distabat.

1. *Ægyptum*; or, in *Ægyptum*, *invasit*. 2. *Condidit*. *Condo*—"I build" = "I found." Athens was built (founded) by Cecrops—*Athena a Cecrope condita sunt*. *Ædifico*—"I build," = "I complete the building of." I built a house—*Domum ædificavi*. Hence it will be seen *ædifico* can hardly be applied to a city. 3. *Nomen gerit*; or, *nomen fert*. 4. *Successu*—abl. of cause. 5. *Inter*—"Among the number of." *Inter occisos*—Among the number of the slain. *Apud*—"among, with, according to the custom of;" as, It was a custom among the Persians—*Apud Persas mos fuit*; in which sentence *inter* would not do, for "among" is not = "among the number of." 6. *Fidem ei facerent*—Made him believe. *Habere fidem alicui*—To believe one. *Dare fidem alicui*—To give one an assurance, to pass one's word to one. *Fallere fidem*—To break one's word. *Solvere fidem*—To keep one's word. 7. *Defatigatione et siti*—Abls. of cause. 8. *Ficti. Fictus* and *commentitus*—"Imaginary, not real, pretended." 9. *Iter*—Acc. of distance or measure.

## XXIII.

Attalus Philadelphus, Pergami rex, anno ætatis octogesimo secundo, veneno sublatu est; eique successit Attalus Philopator. Hicce princeps, postquam crudelitate se tam odiosum reddidit, ut vix unum verum amicum haberet singulisque horis timeret ne vel expelleretur vel interimeretur vestitum sordidum induit, regnique administratione aliis commissâ, totum tempus in horto consumpsit, ubi manu suâ operatus est. Divitias suas, quæ maximæ fuerunt, moriens Romanis reliquit; qui, tamen, antequam iis sunt potiti, certare cum Aristonico coacti sunt, qui eas jure non Romanorum sed suas esse putavit.

1. *Veneno sublatu est*, i.e. was carried, or cut, off by poison. "He was poisoned," may mean also, "poison was administered to him," without, however, causing his death; in this case the Lat. will be—*Venenum ei datum est*. Poison was administered—*Venenum præbitum est*. To take poison—*Sumere venenum*. 2. *Eique successit*—VI. 1. 3. *Certare, or contendere*—"to contend," or "contest," in which sense they are both intransitive. Greek contends with Greek—

*Græcus cum Græco contendit.* He contested the crown with me—*Mecum de regno certavit.* *Contendo*, the only verb signifying “to contend” that takes the acc. and inf. after it, includes the idea of saying or affirming strongly, which *certo* never does; as, I contend that these words are true—*Contendo hæc verba vera esse.* 4. *Romanorum . . . . suas*—§ 31.

## XXIV.

Robertus Brussius, anno regni sui vigesimo quarto, consiliarios suos arcessitos, certiores fecit quam debilem se esse sentiret, dixitque se cito ad melius regnum discessurum esse et sibi filium suum Davidem successurum. “Quum viderim,” inquit, “quam cupidè Angli occasionem nobis nocendi querant, sciamque diuturnam pacem ad homines inertes faciendos pertinere, vehementer suadeo ne usus armorum intermitatur, utque societas quam cum Gallia habemus integra servetur.” In expeditionem contra Turcas et Saracenos, qui Terram Sanctam possidebant, proficisci antea constituerat, quo non facto, cor suum eò portari et prope Sanctum sepulchrum sepeliri iussit.

1. *Arcessitos*—“Being sent for.” 2. *Debilem*.—The grammatical order is *sentiret se esse debilem.* 3. *Se discessurum esse, et sibi filium successurum*—§ 66. 4. *Viderim sciamque*.—Tenses determined by *suadeo*—“Having seen (before this), and knowing (just now), I advise,” &c. 5. *Noceo* governs the dat. *Lædo*, the acc. 6. *Ne* represents *ut non*; therefore *ut* must be expressed with *servetur*, as its clause is positive. 7. *Prope* for the most part governs the acc., sometimes the dat., sometimes the abl. with *a*, sometimes the acc. with *ad*.

## XXV.

Nicomedes, is Prusiæ filius, qui a Romanis educatus erat quique in patris sui regnum parricidio successerat, mortuus est anno Romæ sexcentesimo sexagesimo septimo, imperiumque alii Nicomedi, quem filium ex saltatrice habuerat, reliquit. Hic Nicomedes obtinuit ut patris sui testamentum Romæ confirmaretur, sed Chrestos, regis prioris ex alia uxore filius, de regno cum eo certavit, atque a Mithridate, Ponti rege, adjutus est. Fratrem alterum contra alterum armare revera fuit bellum civile accendere; et omnium quæ accidere potuerunt hoc Mithridati gratissimum fuit, existimabat enim aditum sibi ad regionem potiendam ita patefactum iri, et sibi persuaserat Romanos domi occupatiores esse quam ut curarent quid in Bithynia fieret.

1. *Quem filium*.—It might appear from the Eng. that “son” should agree in case with “Nicomedes;” but the Lat. prefers taking *filius* into the relative clause, and into the same case as *quem*—“which son he had.” Somewhat similar to this is the following idiom:—They

expelled the inhabitants, a measure which was both cruel and unjust—*Incolas expulerunt, quæ res et crudelis et injusta fuit*; in this way *res* becomes the nom. to *fuit*, and *quæ* agrees with it like any other adj.; we could not say *res quæ*, for then *res* would have nothing to depend upon or be governed by, *quæ* being the nom. to *fuit*. So, One of the consuls has caused his own son to be put to death, a cruelty which the gods will avenge—*Alter consulum filium suum occidendum curavit, quam crudelitatem dii ulciscuntur*. 2. *Certavit*—XXIII. 3. 3. *Alterum armare*—§§ 29, 44. 4. *Gratissimum*—§ 34. 5. *Persuaserat*—§ 51.

## XXVI.

Cato Censor, cum magno suo dedecore, sese junxit malevolis iis hominibus qui Scipioni inviderunt. Magnus hicce vir in Siciliam insulam ut proconsul missus erat; dixeruntque, eum, quum tempus ibi segniter ageret, imperio privari domumque revocari debere. Etiam affirmârunt expeditionem in quâ Socrenses adortus esset, suscipi non debuisse. Senatores, his criminibus auditis, ita locuti esse narrantur; "Nos qui iudices futuri sumus vobis, qui accusatores estis, credere non possumus; sed legatos constituemus qui in Siciliam ad rem investigandam eant; quumque ex iis, quid factum sit, audierimus, sciemus utrum reprehensione proconsul noster an laude sit dignus."

1. *Cum magno suo dedecore*.—With great danger to himself and others—*Magno cum suo aliorumque periculo*—§ 31. 2. *Junxit*—XII. 2. 3. *Privari debere*.—Compare with *suscipi debuisse*—§ 52. 4. *Adortus esset*.—Indirect, being part of the statement made by the accusers. 5. *Futuri sumus*—"are to be" being equivalent to "are going to be," "are about to be." 6. *Credere*. I believe the report—*Rumori credo*. He is believed—*Ei creditur*; *credo* being impersonal in pass. in the sense of "give credit to." He is believed (supposed) to have perished—*Pertisse creditur*; *credo* in this sense being personal in pass. 7. *Utrum . . . an*—§ 57.

## XXVII.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo quinquagesimo secundo, amici quidam, quorum prudentia non minus conspicua quam fidelitas fuit, Comitem Duglassiæ, qui in Jacobi Secundi iram incurrerat, adierunt, eumque ita allocuti sunt; "Hoc tempore venimus, tibi suadentes ut id facias quod et tibi ipsi et toti amicorum tuorum multitudini utile esse putamus. Certè non potes tam stultus esse ut credas te regi diu resistere posse; ideoque necessarium est te obedientiâ conari gratiam ejus recuperare. I et pete ut in ejus amicitiam accipiaris; et crede futurum non fuisse ut rogareris ut hoc faceres, si salutem tibi aliter futuram esse putâssemus." Bene notum est Duglassium admonitioni non paruisse.

1. *Non minus conspicua quam fidelitas.* Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar—*Cicero eloquentior quam Cæsar fuit*, i.e., both were eloquent, but Cicero more so than Cæsar. *Cicero eloquentior Cæsare fuit* does not necessarily imply that Cæsar had any eloquence, although Cicero had at least some. 2. *Tam stultus ut*—"So foolish that"—in such a case as this we must take care never to introduce *quam* before *ut*, as might perhaps be supposed, both in consequence of *tam* preceding, and the Eng. being equivalent to "be not so foolish as that." 3. *Necessarium est* is followed by the acc. and inf.; *necesse est* by *ut* (suppressed) and subj. Accordingly we might say here—*Ideoq̄ obedientiâ gratiam ejus recuperare coneris necesse est*; the verb in the subj. should thus immediately precede *necesse est*. 4. *Futurum fuisse ut rogareris* is the periphrastic fut. perf. inf. pass.—§ 42. 5. *Si putassemus*—§ 52. 6. *Aliiter*—"Otherwise"—"in another manner or way," as, You ought to have acted otherwise—*Aliiter facere debuisti*. *Alioqui*, or *alioquin* before a vowel—"otherwise"—"or else, if not;" as, Be silent, otherwise you will be dismissed—*Tace, alioqui dimittemini*. The barbarian demanded that four hundred talents should be paid him, otherwise (or else, if not) he would lay waste the Roman territories with fire and sword—*Barbarus postulavit ut quadringenta talenta sibi penderentur, alioqui se fines Romanos ferro ignique vastaturum esse*; the acc. with inf. is used in consequence of the declaration or threat conveyed.

## XXVII.

Anno Romæ ducentesimo nonagesimo quarto, quum tribuni plebis pacem intra muros urbis ipsius turbarent, consilium foris ad imperium consulare evertendum gerebatur. Herdonius, Sabinus, qui magnam potestatem et divitias habebat, uni ex factionibus in quas Roma divisa est diu faverat, jamque amicis suis, numero ad quatuor millia, collectis, urbem noctu ingressus est, quum Romani inter tenebras nescirent quis hostis esset. Tandem, ubi illuxit, Herdonium viderunt, qui ad arcem pervenerat servisque dicebat, eos qui ad se venissent æquas leges accepturos esse et a patriciorum tyrannide liberatum iri.

1. *Tribuni plebis*—Fixed order. 2. *Muros*. *Murus*—The wall of a city. *Mœnia*—Fortified walls. *Paries*—The wall of a house. 3. *Foris* is used when the question may be asked by *ubi*; *Foras*, when it may be asked by *quo* (whither). 4. *Habebat*. "Possessed" should not be made by *præditus* here, because the possessions are neither mental nor moral endowments. We say *Præditus virtute*, and *Præditus sapientiâ et divitiis*, because *sapientiâ* is mental, although *divitiis* is not. 5. *Numero ad*—"In number amounting to." The number of the shields was three—*Numerus scutorum fuit trium* (the number of three). Many of their number—*Multi ex eorum numero*. A number of men—*Multi homines*. A great number of men—*Magna multitudo hominum*. A very great number of men—*Plurimi homines*. A numerous army—*Magnus exercitus*. Numerous deeds—*Multa facta*. Among the number of the slain—*Inter occisos*. The senators assembled in great numbers—*Senatores frequentes convenērunt*. 6. *Venissent*—After they had come to him, they would receive. 7. *A tyrannide*

*nide liberatum iri*—"would be freed from the tyranny;" but, *Tyrannide liberatum iri*—"would be freed by the tyranny."

## XXIX.

Quinctius Cincinnatus, qui dictator dictus erat, quum Æquos vicisset atque sub jugum misisset, in eorum castris prædam immensam invenit, quam totam militibus (*dat.*) exercitus sui divisit, neque enim putavit partem ullam legionibus consularibus aut Minucio earum duci dari debere. Dixit eos milites qui in hostium potestatem venissent non posse expectare ut ea præmia acciperent quæ victoribus solis deberentur. "Homines ignavissimi estis," inquit, "nec æquum est alios adduci ut infame exemplum vestrum imitentur." Tum ad Minucium conversus ita locutus est; "Quod ad te, Minuei, (*voc.*) attinet, toti populo Romano ostendisti indignum te esse qui ulli exercitui præsis. Tibi igitur suadeo, ut, auctoritate tuâ depositâ, arti belli sub me studeas."

1. *Dictator*. "To appoint a dictator" is always—*Dictatorem dicere*. To appoint a flamen, interrex—*Flaminem, interregem prodere*. 2. *Quam totam*—§ 3. 3. *Expecto* is followed by *ut*, and, as it contains in itself the idea of futurity, is never followed by fut. subj.—§ 40. 4. *Conversus*—being turned—might be *quum conversus esset*, or *quum se convertisset*; but *se convertens* would signify "while in the act of turning," and therefore will not do. 5. *Quod ad te attinet*—As far as you have any hand in the matter. *Quod ad te pertinet*—As far as your interest is concerned. 6. *Indignus, dignus, idoneus*, take after them *qui* with subj.

## XXX.

Caracallæ, Imperatori Romano, quum dixisset se in animo habere unam ex regis Parthici filiabus in matrimonium ducere, libenter permissum est ut Parthiam ingrederetur; incolæ enim, qui Romanos diu timuerant iisque repugnari antea semper voluerant, jam putârunt eos tutò intra fines suos admitti posse, et magna sibi commoda ex eorum amicitia oritura esse. Quam falsa hæc opinio fuerit, vix opus est commemorari. Simul atque exercitus Romani in Parthiam pervenerant, incolæ inermes interfecti sunt. Ne iis quidem qui in domos suas Romanos invitaverant, parsum est; et Caracalla, quasi talis perfidia honesta esset, postulavit ut triumphus et Parthici cognomen sibi darentur.

1. *In matrimonium ducere*, said of a man marrying a woman. *Nubere*—"To marry," or rather "to be married to," used when a woman is the subject. To give in marriage—*In matrimonium collocare*. To give in marriage to one—*Alicui in matrimonium dare*. 2. *Repugnari*—Impersonal—X. 3. *Voluerant*—XIX. 4. *Antea*, or *anti*—"Before"—"formerly." *Ante*, prep.—"before" governing a subst. *Ante-*

*quam*—"Before"—"before the time that, or at which," and qualifying verbs. Compare *Post*, *Postea*, and *Postquam*—XVI. 5. *Simul atque*—"As soon as." The difference of idiom between the Eng. and Lat. prevents the admission of any word for "than" in Lat.—"As soon as they arrived, the unarmed," &c. 6. *Ne tū quidem*—"Not even those." *Ne quidem* are always separated, the emphatic word or words being placed between them. Thus, He did not even reply to his father—*Patri ne respondit quidem*. He did not reply even to his father—*Ne patri quidem respondit*. My father did not give me even a book—*Pater mihi ne librum quidem dedit*. 7. *Quasi*. For the use of the tenses with *quasi*, see § 39. 8. *Parthici cognomen*—VI.

## XXXI.

*Postquam regnum Macedoniae subactum est, anno ante Christum centesimo sexagesimo sexto, Romanorum potestas magnopere formidari coepta est, et vix ulla gens fuit quin Romam legatos mitteret, qui victori populo gratularentur. Paucæ civitatum ex animo tam amicæ Romanis fuerunt, ut, in iis quæ profitebantur, sinceræ essent; nec dubium est quin earum plerisque (dat.) causa hujus honoris habendi fuerit metus ne punirentur quod eorum societatem non colerent. Ut alios omittam, Eumenes, Asiae rex, qui in bello Macedonico se neutris partibus junxerat, in Italiam ipse venit petens ut sibi senatus daretur. Sed Romani, quum nescirent quomodo eum tractarent, legem tulerunt, ne quis, qui nomen regis haberet, urbem ingrederetur.*

1. *Cæpta est*—§ 46. 2. *Gratularentur*. *Gratulari*—"To congratulate," when one party congratulates another. *Congratulari*—"To congratulate," when parties mutually congratulate each other. 3. *Victori populo*. *Victrix acies*. *Victricia arma*. 4. *Partibus*.—This word is used in plu. when it stands for "party." 5. *Ipsa venit*—"Came in person, himself." The person who does this will be punished—*Qui hoc fecerit, punietur*. He said that the person who did this would be punished—*Dixit eum qui hoc fecisset punitum iri*. He was remarkable for the beauty of his person—*Pulchritudine corporis insignis fuit*. 6. He refused to give them an audience—*Eos audire recusavit*. 7. *Legem tulerunt*—Passed a law. *Rogare legem*—To propose a law. The law was in force—*Lex valuit*. 8. *Haberet*.—Indirect, as being contained in the act passed by the Romans.

## XXXII.

*Plautus sub finem belli Punici secundi vixit, et mortuus esse dicitur quingentis septuaginta annis post Romam conditam, id est, centum octoginta duobus annis ante Christum natum. Quot fabulas scripserit Veteribus ipsis vix notum fuit; Varro enim declaravit, e centum et triginta quæ ascriptæ ei essent, se tantum viginti et unam ab eo conditas esse credere. Plauti fabulæ, etsi aliquantum impolitæ, in magna*

admiratione ipsius temporibus habitæ et postea sæpe actæ sunt. Horatius dicit rudes suos majores nimium patienter eas tulisse; sed Ciceroni nequaquam displicuisse videntur. Specimen præbent eorum quæ Cato audire non fastidivit.

1. *Quot*—Indirect interrogative—§ 32. 2. *Aliquantum*, acc. of *extens*. Had *impolitæ* been comparative degree, *aliquanto* (abl. of *excess*) would have been used. 3. *Ipsius*—§ 11. 4. *Temporibus*—Days; *diebus* would be improperly used in this sense. He spent his days in ease—*Sum tempus otio consumpsit*; but, He spent four days in ease—*Quatuor dies otio consumpsit*. 5. *Eorum quæ*—§ 24.

## XXXIII.

Quum notum Romæ esset Cæsarem Rubiconem transisse, senatores qui Pompeio favebant adeo territi sunt, ut subito convenirent et declararent necessarium esse omnes eos cives qui rempublicam salvam esse vellent, arma statim sumere. Pompeius, interrogatus cur tali tempore exercitum non haberet, respondit se ire posse cum duabus legionibus quæ ex Gallia venissent, et præter has amplius triginta millia militum non longè abesse, qui re nulla nisi paucis armis indigerent. Paulo post in Græciam appulit, et novem legiones, tria millia et sexcentos equites auxiliares, classemque sexcentarum navium secum adduxit; quum Cæsar, qui eum secutus est, tantum viginti millia militum legionariorum et sexcentos equites haberet.

2. *Transisse*. To pass over a mountain—*Per montem transire*. To pass through a province—*Per provinciam transire*. To pass over to the enemy—*Ad hostem transfugere*. To pass the winter—*Agere hiemem*. To pass one's word—*Dare fidem*. 2. *Convenirent*—"Met, assembled, came together," intransitive. It is used transitively also, in the sense of "meet with," and governs the acc.; as, They met with him—*Eum convenerunt*. 3. *Necessarium esse*—XXVII. 4. *Vellent*—XIX. 5. *Salvam*. *Salvus*—"Safe, sound, unhurt." *Tutus*—"Safe, free from danger." *Incolumis*—"Safe, having escaped unhurt from danger." *Securus*—"Safe, heedless of or not apprehending danger." 6. *Sumere*—Imperf. inf. 7. *Præter has*—X. 8. *Indigerent*. *Indigeo*—I want, stand in need of. *Egeo*—I want, desire. *Caveo*—I want, am without, or have not=*non habeo*. 9. *Appulit*—XI.

## XXXIV.

Latini a Romanis victi erant; sed tantum abfuit ut spem amitterent, ut ad certamen majore audaciâ redirent. Numicius, qui solus imperator fuisse videtur, milites convocatos ita allocutus est; "Negari non potest copias nostras cedere coactas esse; sed ne putetis hostem qui eas repulit, victoriam incruentam reportasse. Considerate quanta Romanorum multitudo interfecta sit, et videbitis parum causæ victoribus glori-

andi esso. Alter consulum filium suum occidendum curavit, quam crudelitatem diu ulciscuntur; alter autem sese indignum qui vivat iudicavit. Lavinii nobis auxilio veniunt; qui quum advenerint, in aciem iterum prodeamus; nec dubito quin victoria nostra sit futura.

1. *Tantum abfuit ut*—XXI. 6. 2. *Quam crudelitatem*—XXV. 3. *Autem*—VIII. 4. *Judicavit* is perf. def., and therefore followed by *vivat*. 5. *Nobis auxilio veniunt*—*Venio* is thus followed by two dat., also *fo, forem, do, tribuo, duco, habeo, relinquo, verto, mitto, &c.* 6. *Qui quum*, &c. The rel. connects the two clauses more closely than the conjunction and personal pronoun would do. 7. *Futura sit. Quin* requires the subj., and futurity is to be expressed—§ 40.

## XXXV.

Campani, quum praelium cum Samnitibus commisissent victique essent, Romanorum opem implorare coacti sunt. Eorum legati, in senatum introducti, ita sunt locuti. "Venimus ut auxilium vestrum in praesens petamus, nostramque vobis amicitiam in perpetuum polliceamur. Societas nostra, si eam in rebus nostris prosperis obtulissemus, neque per se tam firma neque vobis tam utilis fuisset quam nunc erit. Si amicitia tunc contracta esset, nunquam oblivisci potuissemus nos vobis pares esse; neque nobis necessitas memoriae beneficiorum retinendae imposita esset. Sed ut res se habet, praesidium quod a vobis accipiemus, adimet nobis (*dat.*) facultatem vobiscum unquam certandi, ne, ita faciendo, in servatores nostros ingrati et misericordiae indigni videamur."

1. *In praesens*—For the present. *In praesenti*—At present. To this present day—*Ad hunc usque diem*. 2. *Ut auxilium petamus*—might be *auxilium petitem* (sup.), *ad auxilium petendum*, or *auxilium petitori*. 3. *Si*. Both this and the following sentence are hypothetical. 4. *Obtulissemus*. I was offered money to do it—*Pecunia mihi oblata est, si facere vellem*. An opportunity offered—*Occasio oblata est*. To offer terms—*Conditiones offerre*. To offer an injury to one—*Injuriam alicui inferre*. To offer an affront to one—*Contumeliam alicui inferre*. To offer a reward—*Premium proponere*. 5. *Nunc*—"Now," "at this time"—emphatic, as opposed to *in rebus prosperis*. Adversity—*Res adversa*. 6. *Ut res se habet*. Such is the case—*Ita res se habet*. He was kind, cruel, in the case of his brother—*Benignus, crudelis, in fratre suo fuit*. 7. *Ingratus in nos*—Ungrateful to us. *Ingratus nobis*—Disagreeable to us.

## XXXVI.

Tumultu Romae exorto, Appius senatui suasit, ut exercitum conscriberet ex civibus turbulentissimis, quos dixit eam virtutem bellicam peregre utiliter adhibituros quae eos domi tam intractabiles redderet. "Nos," inquit, "quorum copiae vic-



trices semper fuerunt quique pace cum gentibus finitimis nullam aliam ob causam fruimur nisi quod nobis resisti non potest, civitatem aliquam cui bellum inferamus facillè invenire possumus. Hoc, Conscripti Patres, fieri jubete, et auctoritas vestra nobis salutem afferet." Quinctius contra declaravit expectari non posse ut bonum ullum e consilio tam manifestè injusto oriretur, civesque suos monuit ut satis haberent hostium impetus repellere.

1. *Domī*. This form is used for "at home," *domūs* for "of the house." 2. *Inferamus*.—Potential. 3. *Nobis salutem afferet*; or, *nobis saluti erit*. 4. *Satis haberent*. The object or acc. is the clause *hostium impetus repellere*. The regular syntax of *satis habere* is the inf., or *quod*; but sometimes it will be necessary to use *si*. He was contented with subduing them—*Satis habuit eos domare*. Be satisfied with defending yourself—*Satis habeas, si teipsum defendas*. This will not satisfy me—*Hoc mihi non satisfaciet*. To satisfy ambition—*Ambitionem explere*.

### XXXVII.

Actius Clausus natus est Regilli in urbe Sabinorum, ubi magnas possessiones nec minorem auctoritatem habuit. Quum Sabini instigati essent ut expulsos Tarquinius, regnum recuperare conantes, adjuvarent, Poplicola insigni huic viro persuasit ut Romanorum causam complecteretur. Sagacior Actius fuit quam ut non perciperet civium suorum interesse ut pacem cum potenti hoc populo servarent; ideoque, quandoque oblata est occasio, iis suasit ne bellum inutile periculosumque inirent. Qui Actio invidebant, ejus consilium in malam partem interpretati sunt, dixeruntque eum ambitiosum esse hominem qui legionum Romanarum præsidio fretus, earum ope Sabinos in servitutem redigere vellet. Actius sibi integritatis conscius, tam indigne tulit tales suspiciones in se excitari, ut patriam suam ingratam relinqueret Romamque migraret.

1. *Regilli, in urbe*.—Were we to use the prep. before the proper name, it would not be required before *urbe*; thus, *natus est in Regillo, urbe*. When the name of a town is in this way used without a governing preposition, the common descriptive subst. does not agree with it, but is governed as here by a prep. He came to Rome, a city of Latium—*Romam, ad urbem Latii, venit*; or, *Ad Romam, Latii urbem, venit*. 2. *Auctoritatem*. To have influence with one—*Apud aliquem auctoritatem habere*. They were influenced by his example—*Ejus exemplo moti sunt*. 3. *Interesse*. It is our interest that these things should be done—*Interest nostra hæc fieri*; or, *ut hæc fiant*. It is your interest to come—*Interest tua venire*; or, *ut venias*. It is your interest who (§ 31, b) did it—*Interest tua qui fecisti*. It concerns me and the king—*Mea et regis interest*. To make interest with the people—*Gratiam apud plebem inire*. To favour one's interest—

*Alícujus rebus studere.* 4. *Civium.* *Civis*—"A countryman," i.e., one of the same city. *Popularis*—"A countryman," i.e., one of the same country or nation. *Rusticus*—"A countryman," in opposition to "a townsman." 5. *Consciús*—XX. 6. *Migrare*—"To remove" to another place with the intention of residing there, at least for a time.

## XXXVIII.

Scriptores Romani confitentur Numam Pompilium neque se armis insignem reddidisse neque civitatem ullo bello auxisse. Ei gloriæ maximæ fuit suorum mores corrigere; Romæque emendationem a sese orsus est. Trecentos illos custodes quos Romulus adhibuerat, dimisit, dicens, non decere se in populum cui diffideret regnare, nec populo diffidere qui se regnare coegisset. Civitas Romana eo tempore ex audacibus et sceleratis hominibus constabat, qui latrocinii et cædibus assuefacti erant, eorumque ferociâ Romulus bene usus erat, eam in hostes peregrinos convertendo. Numa tamen vidit hunc belli amorem coercendum esse, et quidquid fecit eo pertinuit.

1. *Confitentur.* The only verbs signifying "to acknowledge" that take the acc. and inf. are *Fateor* and *Confiteor*. 2. *Se insignem reddidisse*, or, *se insignivisse*. 3. *Auxisse.* This increased their courage—*Hoc virtutem iis auxit.* The state increased—*Civitas crevit.* 4. *A sese orsus est.* The year begins with January—*Annus ab Januario incipit.* The year begins in January—*Annus Januario incipit.* He begins at the end—*A fine incipit.* 5. *Coegisset.*—Of verbs signifying "to compel, force," *cogo* is followed by inf. They were compelled to speak—*Coacti sunt loqui.* They were compelled to a surrender—*In deditionem compulsi sunt.* He forced a confession from me—*Confessionem mihi expressit.*

## XXXIX.

Curio, tribunus plebis Romanæ, qui Cæsaris causæ semper faverat, quum inveniret se non posse in urbe sine maximo suo aliorumque periculo manere, Româ fugit, tam ut salutis suæ consulere, quam ut Cæsarem certiores faceret quid ageretur. Quum ad Cæsarem, qui tum in Gallia erat, pervenisset, ei suasit, ut, quascunque copias haberet, cum iis ad urbem properaret, summam enim potestatem in cruentas hominis unius manus cito venturam esse et totius civitatis libertatem extinctum iri, si permissum esset ut consilia, quæ inirentur, procederent. "Juli," inquit, "tu qui hostes peregrinos omnes, qui tibi resistere ausi sunt, vicisti, is non es qui ulli adversario cedas, aut cives a civibus in servitutem redigi patiaris." Cæsar Curionem quam benignissimè accepit, eumque ita allocutus est; "Mihi, qui amicitiam tuam tam sæpe expertus sum, opus non est dici quid hoc tempore

sentias ; sed consilium quod nunc mihi das sequi non possum, quoad alia omnia tentata fuerint."

1. *Tam . . . . quam* are here in connection with verbs or verbal clauses. In the following sentence they are in connection with subst. :—*Lucan* is not so much a poet as a historian—*Lucanus non tam poeta quam historicus est*. Another use of them is to qualify adjs. and advs.; as, He rendered his enemies as kind as friends—*Inimicos suos tam benignos quam amicos reddidit*. My books are not so good as yours—*Mei libri non tam boni quam tui sunt*. I know this as well as you—*Hoc ego scio tam bene quam tu*, if the meaning be—My knowledge of the matter is as good as yours; but the same Eng. may mean—I am not ignorant of the matter any more than you are, *i.e.*, You know it, and I know it too, in which case the Lat. will be, *Hoc ego scio æque ac tu*. 2. *Saluti consuleret*—Consult, provide for his safety. *Senatum de re consului*—I consulted, or asked the advice of the senate on the subject. But, *Senatui consului*—I consulted, or provided for, the safety or good of the senate. The Sibylline books were consulted—*Libri Sibyllini consulti sunt*. I consulted these authors—*Hos auctores consului*. The king's will was consulted—*Regis voluntati consultum est*. 3. *Consulto* is intrans.—They consulted with me—*Mecum consularunt*. 3. *Suo aliorumque periculo*—XXVI. 1. Hercules conquered the Amazons with greater glory to them than to himself—*Hercules Amazonas vicit cum majore earum quam sua gloria*. Advantage to the state—*Civitatis commodum*. I did this with greater advantage to them than to myself—*Hoc cum majore eorum quam mea utilitate feci*. 4. *Quascunque*—§ 23. 5. *Summam enim potestatem*—§ 36, f. 6. *Totius civitatis*. The whole people, army—*Totus populus, exercitus*. But, The whole of the inhabitants—*Omnes incolæ*; *toti* is not the word here; it would mean "whole" = "unbroken, undiminished." 7. *Peregrinos*—II. 8. *Ausi sunt*. *Audeo* is the only one of the neuter passive verbs that is used in the passive voice. Many things are ventured upon—*Multa audentur*. *Ausus*—"Having ventured upon," and also "being ventured upon," the former being the common usage. Many things have to be ventured upon—*Multa sunt audenda*—IV. 9. *Is non sum qui*—§§ 1, 50. 10. *Consilium dare*—To give an advice. *Consilium sequi*—To follow or take an advice. *Consilium capere*—To adopt a plan, or form a resolution. 11. *Tentata fuerint*—"Shall have been tried," the sense being fut. perf.

## XL.

Bocchus, Mauritanix rex, adductus erat ut Jugurtham apertè adjuvare desisteret. Sed Sylla ei dixit Romanos hoc satis non habituros, neque existimatos eum quidquam præmio dignum fecisse, nisi Jugurtha deditus esset. Bocchus respondit se non posse tam injustum esse in eum cui filiam suam in matrimonium dedisset, quemque alias ob causas amaret. Sylla, hæc repulsâ non deterritus, ei instare perseveravit; et tandem ei extorsit promissum se id facturum quod ad Romanorum amicitiam consequendam necessarium esset.

1. *Bocchus adductus erat ut*, or, *Boccho persuasum erat ut*. 2. *Desisteret*. He gave up the undertaking—*Destitit incepto*, or, *ab incepto*. 3. *Satis*

*habituos*—XXXVI. 4. *Quidquam* is often very conveniently used where *ullum* would be ambiguous: Thus, He forgot that he had seen anything—*Oblitus est se quidquam vidisse*; if we said, *Oblitus est se ullum vidisse*, it would leave it uncertain whether *ullum* meant any man or any thing. *Ullam rem* cannot always be substituted, because into some sentences it would be improper to introduce *res*. *Oblitus est se quenquam vidisse* is otherwise ambiguous, for it may mean either—He forgot that he had seen any one, or—He forgot that any one had seen him; but the ambiguity may be obviated thus:—*Oblitus est quenquam a se visum esse*, and, *Oblitus est se a quoquam visum esse*. To this class of sentences, with two accusatives, and an inf., belongs the ambiguous response given by the oracle to Pyrrhus,—viz., *Διο τε, Ἄεα, Ῥωμαίους νικῆσαι posse*. In English, too, especially with poets, ambiguous sentences something like this occur; thus, "The sire the son addressed," where the context must decide whether it is the son or the sire that addressed. 5. *Deditus esset*—pluperf., Because he must have been given up before they could be satisfied. *Dedo*—"I give up (what I would, but cannot, withhold)." *Trado*—"I give up (what it is in my power to withhold)." 6. *Instare perseveravit*. I will continue to study—*Studere perseverabo*. I will continue at my studies—*In meis studiis permanebo*. They continued the work—*Opus continuarunt*. They continued to work—*Laborare perseverarunt*. They continued at the work—*In opere permanserunt*. The war continued long—*Bellum diu duravit*. He continued at home—*Domi mansit*. To continue one in office—*Allicui munus (or magistratum) continuare*. Will you continue to insult me?—*An mihi insultare perstabis?* "But," continued Apollonius, "be he good or bad," &c.—"*Attamen,*" perrexit Apollonius, "*Sive bonus est sive malus,*" &c.

## XLI.

Quo tempore Romani et Sabini in unum populum conjuncti sunt, pactum est ut eorum duo reges, Romulus et Tatius, pari potestate fruerentur. Mors Tatii, regis Sabini, quæ paulo post secuta est, ab historicis varie est narrata; sed certum est eum Laviniæ trucidatum esse. Eò iverat cum Romulo ad sacra quædam facienda, et quum Romulus neminem auctoritatis suæ participem esse vellet, multi eum cædi favisse suspicati sunt. Tatius nullus alius princeps Sabinus successit; atque ex hoc tempore Romulus solus Romæ dominus permansit.

1. *Quo tempore*—an abbreviation for *eo tempore quo*. 2. *Ut*—§ 51. 3. *Fruentur*. *Frutor*—"I enjoy (what is in my possession)." *Potior*—"I enjoy, get possession of." 4. *Certum est, manifestum est, justum est, æquum est, verisimile est, mirum est, utile est, &c.*, are followed by acc. and inf., as, It is profitable that we should know—*Utile est nos scire*. 5. *Suspicati sunt*. You are suspected of having done it—*Est suspicio te fecisse*. Those suspected of having done it were put to death—*Hi interfecti sunt quos fecisse suspicio erat*. They were suspected of the murder—*In suspicionem cædis venerunt*. It might have been suspected that those things were invented by them—*Suspicio esse potuisset ea ab his esse inventa*. They suspected his integrity—

*De ejus integritate dubitarunt.* To cast suspicion on one—*Aliquem in suspicionem adducere.* To entertain a suspicion—*Suspicionem habere.* Various were the suspicions entertained by people at that time—*Varie tum fuerunt hominum suspensiones.* 6. *Pernansit*—XL.

## XLII.

Mamertini, dum bellum cum Syracusanis gerebant, quum peregrinos hostibus auxilio venire audissent, legatos miserunt, qui a senatu Romanopeterent ut novas sibi copias suppeditaret. Dixerunt, se, etsi uni genti diu restitissent, cum duabus contendere non posse; et, si denegatum sibi auxilium esset, possessiones omnes quas in Sicilia insula haberent sibi ademptum iri, atque in postestatem crudelium rapaciumque tyrannorum venturas esse. Adjecerunt hos hostes, si permissum iis esset ut ita dominarentur, Romæ ipsi forsitan molestos fore. Senatores, postquam de re deliberarunt, responderunt Syracusanos tantum conari recuperare urbem quâ injustissimè privati essent, nec decere Romanos in aliis defendere quod ipsi nollent facere.

1. *Cum Syracusanis.* The Romans were at war with the Persians—*Bel-lum Romanis fuit cum Persis.* An alliance with the Thracians—*Societas Thracum.* But, An alliance of the Macedonians with the Thracians—*Societas Macedonum cum Thracibus.* And, He made an alliance with the Thracians—*Societatem cum Thracibus fecit (inicit).*
2. *Hostibus auxilio venire*—XXXIV. 3. *Legatos qui*—III. 4. *Ab eo petierunt*—They begged or asked of him. *Eum petierunt*—They aimed at him. *Romam petiuit*—He made for Rome. So, *Ab eo postularunt*—They demanded of him. But, *Eum postularunt*—They demanded him. *Veniam ab eo petiuit*—He begged his pardon; *veniam ejus petiuit* will not do. I beg your pardon—*Veniam a te peto*; not *tuam veniam peto*. The expression, *Posce deum veniam* is poetical, and cannot be properly used by us; for *posco* means, "I demand." The Romans used this verb because they thought that, if they performed certain rites and services to their gods they had a right to demand pardon, 5. *Suppeditaret*—Supply troops to them. They were supplied with ships by the king—*Naves iis a rege suppeditatæ sunt.* But, They were supplied with ships, i.e., had them already in their possession—*Navibus instructi sunt*; from which example, it will be seen that *suppeditari* and *instrui* differ both in meaning and in syntax. 6. *Denegatum esset*—XXI. 7. *Molestos* governs *Romæ*; if no case had to be governed here, we would use *turbulentos*.—See XXXVI. 8. *Decere.* It ill became him to be so employed—*Eum ita occupari minimè decebat.* These things become you—*Hæc te decet.*

## XLIII.

Sylla prætor fuit anno Romæ sexcentesimo quinquagesimo nono, postquam anno superiore repulsus est. Veram repulsæ suæ causam celare conatus est, dicendo populum, magnificos a se ludos expectantem, præturam sibi denegasse, ut ædilitatem petere cogeretur. Plutarchus, tamen, alique,

quibus facile credi potest, affirmant eum existimasse se quidquid rogasset adepturum, atque hanc arrogantiam toti populo magnopere displicuisse. Post unius anni moram, iterum prodiiit; neque est cur miremur, eum, usu doctum, sese aliter tum gessisse. Partim oratione populari partimque pecunia id quod volebat consecutus est.

1. *Postquam*—XVI. We very rarely find *postquam* joined with the pluperf.—Indic. even when the Eng. is pluperf., and then only when there is emphasis on that tense. But there is no such restriction with the potential and subj.; as, They said that they would come after the consul had departed from the city—*Dixerunt se venturos esse postquam consul ab urbe discessisset*. 2. *Superiore* or *prior*. 3. *Celare*. He concealed the matter from his father—*Rom patrem celavit*; or, *Patrem de re celavit*. The matter was concealed from me—*Ego celatus sum de re*. He concealed his being there—*Dissimulavit se ibi fuisse*. It is not to be concealed that this was known before—*Non est dissimulandum hoc antea notum fuisse*. *Dissimulo* is the only verb signifying “to conceal” that takes acc. and inf. 4. *Petere*. He was a candidate for admission—*Petiit ut admitteretur*. 5. *Rogasset*—Obs. tense. 6. *Neque est cur miremur*. Compare with this the expression, *Mihi opus non est dici in XXXIX*. What need has he of a guide—*Quid opus ei est duce*. We need not here mention—*Non opus est ut hic commemoremus*. There can be no need that we should relate—*Non opus esse potest ut narremus*. You need not be uneasy at this; or, You have no reason to be uneasy at this—*Non est cur de hac re sollicitus sis*; or, *Nihil* (or *nihil cause*) *est cur*, &c. A historian, whose name need not be mentioned, says—*Historicus, cuius nomen commemorari opus non est, dicit*. When an active verb follows *opus est*, *ut* with the subj. is preferred; and when a passive follows, the acc. with inf. 7. *Id quod volebat*—lit. That which he wished. My object was to discover who did it—*Mihi propositum fuit deprehendere quis fecisset*. The object of the book is to show what may be accomplished by perseverance—*Libro propositum est ostendere quid perseverantiâ perfici possit*. His chief object was to console his mourning countrymen—*Ei hoc maximè propositum fuit ut mæstos populares suos consolaretur*. In the first two examples the inf. with its clause stands as the subject of the verb *sum*; but in the last the introduction of *hoc* changes the syntax from the inf. to *ut*. He was an object of terror to them—*Is fuit terrori*. He is an object of dread to me—*Mihi metuendus est*. He was an object of pity—*Misericordiâ dignus fuit*. He was an object of ridicule to them—*Is fuit irrisui*. This made him an object of their envy and hatred—*Hoc fecit ut in eorum invidiam odiumque veniret*.

#### XLIV.

Antonius, quum juvenis esset, e Roma discessit, ut eloquentiæ artiæque bellicæ in Græcia studeret; et, quum Romam rediisset, augur tribunusque plebis creatus est. Quum factum esset dissidium inter Cæsarem et Pompeium, Antonius declaravit duos hosce duces, quorum ambitio insatiabilis esset, quique magnis exercitibus in provinciis præessent,

debere imperio privari; postea vero Cæsaris causam amplexus est, eique suavit ut bellum in Italiam inferret. Post Cæsaris cædem, populus Antonii eloquentia ad ulciscendum tam vehementer stimulatus est, atque in eum, ut Cæsaris amicum, tam bene animatus fuit, ut verisimile sit eum in Cæsaris potestatem successurum fuisse nisi Cicero adversario ejus Octavio favisset.

1. *Bellicus*. *Bellicus*—"Warlike, used in war, pertaining to war," as *Bellicæ machinæ*—Warlike machines or engines. *Bellicus equus*—A war-horse. *Bellicosus*—"Warlike, fond of war," as, *Vir bellicosus*—A warlike man, a man fond of war. So, *Gens bellicosa*—A nation fond of war. 2. *Quum rediisset*—On his return, i. e., when he had returned. But, On his return, he was driven by a tempest to the coast of Africa—*Quum rediret* (while he was returning) *tempestate ad Africæ oram actus est*. 3. *Quorum ambitio esset, quique præessent*. These clauses form part of Antony's declaration given here indirectly, and the sentiments are attributed to him. Had the clauses, however, been reflections of the historian's, casually thrown in as if by parenthesis, these verbs would have been in the indicative—§ 36, f. 4. *Ulciscendum*. In revenge, the Greeks invested the city—*Ulciscendi causa, Græci urbem obsederunt*. Sylla was revenged of Marius—*Sylla de Mario vindicatus est*. 5. *In eum bene animatus*. He was ill disposed to them—*In eos malè animatus fuit*. A well-disposed boy—*Puer probæ indolis*, or *puer probus*, or *puer probis moribus*. An ill-disposed boy—*Puer pravis moribus*. I do not know how he is disposed to me—*Nescio quali animo erga me sit*. They were not disposed to yield—*Cedere noluerunt*. His natural disposition was soon manifest—*Ejus indoles citò manifesta fuit*. They were acquainted with his wicked disposition—*Pravum ejus ingenium noverunt*. He was of quite a different disposition—*Omniñd alio ingenio fuit*. To be at one's disposal—*In alicujus potestate esse*.

#### XLV.

Helvetii, quibus Orgetorix persuaserat ut ad regionem ampliorem fertiliorēque migrarent, quum Cæsarem Genevā subito pervenisse invenissent, ab eo petierunt ut sibi per provinciam Romanam transire liceret, simul promittentes se nihil injuriæ facturos. Cæsar, qui paucas tantum copias adhuc habebat, dixit hanc postulationem ejusmodi esse ut statim respondere non posset; se igitur nonnihil temporis ad deliberandum sumpturum, et Helvetiorum legatos certo die ad se reverti posse. Legatis iterum die constituto missis, Cæsar, qui magnum jam exercitum collegerat, dixit non posse iis permitti ut transirent; si autem, se invito, ire conati essent, se eos vi prohibiturum.

1. *Simul*—"At the same time," marks a connection with what goes before; it corrects, modifies, and makes some important addition to what has already been said—They asked him for leave, and added

a promise. God is merciful, but at the same time (*along with that*) He is just—*Deus est misericors, at simul iustus est*. *Simul* is to be carefully distinguished from *Eodem tempore*—"at the same time," i. e., "at the same period or point of time;" as, The three generals were put to death at the same time—*Tres duces eodem tempore interfecti sunt*. They acknowledge that the peace was necessary, but, at the same time, they contend, &c.—*Constituentur pacem necessariam fuisse, sed simul contendunt*, &c. He put into his hand a small image, saying at the same time (*along with that*) that he had the charge of the gate—*Parvam imaginem ei in manum dedit, simul dicens se portas praeesse*. It is difficult for a translator to be at once faithful and elegant—*Interpreti esse simul fidum simul elegantem difficile est*. They did this, at once to gratify him, and because they thought it would be useful to themselves—*Hoc fecerunt, simul ut ei gratificarentur, simul quod sibi ipsis utile fore putabant*. 2. *Nihil injuria*—No amount of injury, not a particle of injury. *Nullam injuriam*. No injury of any sort. 3. *Ejusmodi* and *huiusmodi* are the gen. of *is, hic*, and *modus*, and equivalent to *ejus generis, huius generis*. They cannot be used without a word to govern them in the gen. regularly like any other subst. He delivered a speech of this (that) kind—*Orationem huiusmodi (ejusmodi) habuit*. There was a fable to the following effect—*Fabula huiusmodi fuit*. He spoke to this effect—*In hanc sententiam locutus est*; here *huiusmodi* will not do, because there is nothing to govern it in the gen. 4. *Se*—An assertion. He said that he. 5. *Nonnihil*—§ 30. 6. *Certo. Certus*—"Certain, fixed, appointed," is explained by *constituto* following. 7. *Conati essent*.—Obs. tense. He was to prevent, if they (after they) should have made the attempt. 8. *Se invito*. He said that he had done it against his own will (or, unwillingly)—*Dixit se invito fecisse*. They did it against his will, or in spite of him—*Eo invito (he being unwilling) fecerunt*. I did it against my will—*In invito feci*. They did it against my will—*Me invito fecerunt*.

## XLVI.

*Quæ scriptores antiqui de Semiramide narrarunt, tam varia sunt, ut, qui temporibus hodiernis ad historiam ejus investigandam diligentissime incubuerunt, querantur multas esse partes quæ adhuc dubiæ permaneant. Sunt qui affirmant eam Ascalone natam esse, atque in solitudine expositam, et aliquamdiu a columbis nutritam, tandem a pastore, nomine Simma, repertam esse, qui eam educaverit et in matrimonium Menoni dederit. Hoc non nisi loco fabulæ haberi potest; sed certum est eam postea Nino nupsisse, et, quum hic se regno abdicasset, solam Assyriæ gubernatricem factam esse.*

1. *Quæ scriptores narrant, sunt varia*—Those things which writers relate are various. The accounts given by historians are often obscure—*Quæ ab historicis narrantur sæpe sunt obscura*. I received accounts of his having come—*Eum venisse accepi*. The common accounts (traditions) are various—*Quæ vulgo traduntur varia sunt*. There is no account in any author of his ever having said so—*Apud nulum auctorem narratur eum unquam ita dixisse*. According to other



accounts—*Ut alii narrant.* The first inhabitants of Sicily of whom any accounts had reached the Greeks were the Cyclops and the Læstrigons—*incolarum Siciliæ de quibus quidquam ad Græcorum aures pervenerat, primi fuerunt Cyclopes et Læstrigones.* The accounts of Orpheus—*Quæ de Orpheo narrantur.* The accounts we have of Orpheus—*Quæ de Orpheo accepimus.* Livy gives an account of this—*Livius hoc narrat.* 2. *Incubuerunt.* I give my attention to the matter—*In rem incumbo.* *Incumbo* with the dat. signifies "to lean against," as, I leaned against the tree—*Arbori incubui.* 3. *Querantur.* He complained to me of the injury—*Apud me de injuria questus est.* 4. *Sunt qui affirmant*—§§ 30, 50. 5. *Ascalone natam esse*—That she was a native of Ascalon, that she was born at Ascalon, that Ascalon was her birth-place, or the place of her nativity—The Lat. will be the same in all these cases. But, She lived at Ascalon, the place of her nativity—*Vixit Ascalone, ubi nata est.* His native city—*Urbs in quâ natus est.* 6. *Educaverit, dederit,* tenses dependent on *Affirmant.* 7. *Nuptam esse*—XXX. 8. *Se regno abdicasset.* To resign the crown to one—*Alicui regnum tradere.* The difference between *Abire magistratu* and *se magistratu abdicare*, is, that the former is the expression used when one "resigns or goes out of office when the usual or fixed time expires;" the latter when one "resigns or goes out of office before the regular time expires;" Thus, The Romans insisted on the Dictators' not resigning (or abdicating) till the time was out—*Romani Dictatoribus institerunt ut sese magistratu ne prius abdicarent quam tempus exisset.* 9. *Fieri*—"To become, or be made at once;" *Evadere*—"To become by degrees." We are daily becoming wiser and wiser—*Indies magis magisque sapientes evadimus.*

## XLVII.

Syracusæ, quæ ab Archia Corinthio conditæ esse dicuntur, diu crudeliterque a tyrannis oppressæ erant, et ad postremum in Romanorum potestatem venerunt, a Marcello consule captæ, ducentis et duodecim annis ante Christum, postquam aliquanto minus quingentos annos steterunt. Vix ulla potest commemorari obsidio, in qua occupati fuerunt Romani, quæ vel longior vel molestior fuerit, nam urbs bellicis machinis Archimedis mirum in modum defensa est. Toties repulsi erant Romani, ut, tandem percipientes parum verisimile esse se rem vi aperta perfecturos, ad dolum confugerent militesque, qui in statione erant, corrumperent.

1. *Archia Corinthio*—Archias the Corinthian. Henry of England—*Henricus Anglus.* 2. *Ad postremum.* He resisted to the last—*Ad extremum restitit.* 3. *In Romanorum potestatem venerunt*—Fell under the power of, or into the hands of, the Romans; compare *Potestatem in hominis manus venturam esse*, in XXXIX. The fleet fell into their hands—*Classis in eorum manus venit.* To fall into suspicion—*In suspicionem venire.* The general fell into infamy—*Dux in infamiam incidit.* The Tiber falls into the sea—*Tiberis in mare influit.* To fall into a disease—*In morbum incidere.* 4. *Aliquanto minus*—"Less by somewhat"—XXXII. 5. *Steterunt*—For the use of this tense, see XLIII. 1. 6. *Vix ulla potest commemorari obsidio quæ fuerit.*

*Quæ* here requires the subj., the *predicate* being in the rel. clause—  
 “A more tedious and troublesome siege can scarcely be mentioned”  
 — (§ 50.) The clause in *quâ occupati fuerunt Romani* is merely explanatory. 7. *Bellicis*—XLIV. 1.

## XLVIII.

*Cæsari* quondam querenti senatum tam infrequentem esse, *Quintus Considius*, qui ætate provectus erat, dixit senatores de industria abesse, quod ejus arma militesque timerent. *Cæsar*, se hanc libertatem æquo animo ferre simulans, senem his verbis allocutus est; “Cur te igitur, *Considi*, idem timor domi non continet?” Ad hoc *Considius* respondit senectutem se tali omni formidine liberare; breve enim vitæ spatium quod sibi jam superesset curâ suâ vix dignum esse. Talia convicia *Cæsari* injucunda fuerint, necesse est; ita tamen agere perseveravit ut ea quotidie mereretur.

1. *Quondam*—“One day,” “a certain day (which it is unnecessary to specify),” something like “once on a time,” and a shorter form for *quodam die*. *Quondam* always refers to *past* time. *Olim* may be used with reference either to *past* or *future* time. He once (one day) told me that he had said so—*Quondam mihi dixisti ita dixisse*. We shall all one day return—*Olim omnes redituri sumus*. 2. *Infrequens senatus*—a thinly-attended meeting of the senate. A full senate, or a full meeting of the senate—*Frequens senatus*. The clergy assembled in great numbers at Rome—*Clerici Romam frequentes convenerunt*. This is the proper meaning and usage of *frequens*. 3. *Cæsar Considius dixit*. This is neater than the English idiom where “him” is required, and less liable to ambiguity, if a third party were spoken of to whom the pronoun might be referred—I. 2. 4. *Provectus ætate*. At a farther advanced age—*Provectior ætate*. 5. *Simulat se esse*—“He pretends to be (what he is not).” *Dissimulat se esse*—“He pretends not to be (what he is),” or “conceals, dissembles that he is.” 6. *Respondit*. He replied to me—*Mihi respondit*. He replied to the letter—*Ad literas respondit*. The difference between *Nomini respondet* and *Ad nomen respondet*, is, the former means “He answers to his name,” i.e., his name suits him well, or he is well named; the latter, “He answers to his name,” e.g., when it is called. 7. *Quotidie*—“daily,” used when the *same thing* is said to occur or be done every day, as, This takes place daily—*Hoc quotidie fit*. *Indies*—“daily,” when anything undergoes a change from day to day, as, He becomes wiser daily—*Indies sapientior evadit*. The tree grows daily—*Indies arbor crescit*. The number was diminishing daily—*Indies numerus imminuebatur*. 8. *Ita . . . ut*—in such a manner that. This use of *such . . . as* is to be carefully distinguished from their usage as adj. pronouns; thus, I have not *such* a book as yours—*Non habeo talem librum qualis tuus est*.

## XLIX.

Qui ultimus regum Macedonicorum nomen Philippi gessit, insatiabili ambitione insignis fuit; nec de principe ullo audi-

vimus cujus adversarii plures fuerint, quive majores fortunæ vicissitudines expertus sit. Mirum est quam multæ legationes spatio unius ætatis Romam missæ sint quæ de eo querebantur, et quam cupidæ ejus exitii fuerint. Filio ejus Demetrio, qui tum fortè Romæ erat, permissum est ut ad crimina responderet; et senatores, eum perturbatum videntes, interrogârunt annon chartæ ei ad memoriam adjuvandam a patre suo suppeditatæ essent. Juvenis, quum se libellum a patre suo scriptum habere dixisset, eum recitare jussus est, quum senatus mallet scire quid pater pro se dicere posset, quam filium declamantem audire.

1. *Qui ultimus*—§ 34. 2. *Nomen Philippi*—VI. 3. *Gessit or tuâ*. 4. *Insignis*—noted, remarkable for qualities either good, bad, or indifferent. No pronoun is required here for "his," as no ambiguity can exist; he could be remarkable only for his own ambition. If, however, emphasis be required on "his," then it must be introduced in Lat., as, Patroclus was not more distinguished for his own bravery, than for the love which Achilles bore him—*Patroclus insignior non fuit virtute sua, quam amore quem Achilles in eum habuit*; here "his own bravery" is contrasted with "the love of Achilles."
5. *Fuerint, expertus sit*. The predicate is in the clause of the rel. We have heard of any prince—therefore the predicate is not in this clause; but, We have not heard of any prince having more adversaries—the predicate being in the clause having more adversaries—§ 50.
6. *Fortuna*. *Fortuna*, in sing., signifies "fortune, luck, chance;" in the plu. it means "fortune, possessions, wealth," as, He lost his fortune—*Fortunas amisit*. 7. *Missæ sint, fuerint*—subj. on account of indirect interrog. 8. *Fortè erat*—VII. 9. *Interrogarunt*—They asked him a question. The simple *rogo* also has this meaning. 10. *Annon*. They expected that he would have had papers—XIX. 11. *Chartæ ei a patre suppeditatæ essent*. This form makes *chartæ* more prominent than *Chartas ei pater suppeditasset*, where *pater* is the subject of the verb. 12. *Juvenis*—"A young man, one arrived at manhood." *Adolescens*—"A young man, one still growing to manhood." 13. *Recitare*—"To recite," or "read aloud" for the edification of others. *Legere*—Simply "to read" for one's own edification.

## L.

Anno Romæ, quingentesimo sexagesimo octavo, Appio Claudio Pulchro et Marco Sempronio Tuditano consulibus, tres legati, quorum princeps Quintus Cæcilius Metellus fuit, a senatu Romano in Græciam missi sunt, qui controversias quasdam finirent, quæ inter Philippum Macedonem vicinasque Græciæ respublicas nuper exortæ erant. Philippus, ex quo tempore pacem cum Romanis fecerat, consilia varia excogitaverat ad sese firmandum ad novum bellum quod vitari non posse credebatur; Romanique, crescenti ejus potestati invidentes, lætati sunt sibi occasionem ei resistendi ita suppeditatam

esse. Civitates quæ Romanos ut sese interponerent, rogarant, multis de injuriis jam questæ sunt; sed Philippus affirmavit se in re nulla quam fecisset ullum foedus violasse; eos a quibus accusatus esset injuriam primam intulisse et Romanos qui sibi non permitterent ut sese impugnatum defenderet, omnium injustissimos esse.

1. *Quorum princeps.* This is the proper order. The relative should always, if possible, be first in its clause. When however it stands without a subst. and is governed by a preposition, the prep. comes before it. I saw the man of whom you spoke—*Hominem vidi, de quo locutus es.* But, I saw the man of whose bravery you spoke—*Hominem vidi, cujus de virtute locutus es.* *Quæ de causâ, quam ob rem, not de quâ causa,* nor *ob quam rem,* because in such cases as these the prep. can stand before the case it governs without interfering with the position of the rel. 2. *Controversias finirent.* To settle a dispute—*Controversiam dirimere.* The conquerors possessed the disputed land—*Victores agrum de quo certatum est possidebant.* To terminate differences—*Discordias finire.* A disputed matter—*Res controversa.* This is not the time to dispute, or for disputation—*Hæc non est tempus disputandi.* To dispute a victory—*De victoria certare.* 3. *Interponerent.* He interfered in the matter—*Se rei interposuit.* When the Eng. "in" is equivalent to "in regard to," the prep. *in* with abl. is generally used. 4. *Permitterent.* Were not then allowing him.

## LI.

Ea fuit Alcibiadis ambitio, ut, quum domi omnia quieta essent, civibus suis diceret, "Siciliam insulam commode oppugnari posse, et, si sibi Niciæque exercitus datus esset, se totam regionem cito subacturos esse." Atheniensibus facile persuasum est ut hanc expeditionem susciperent, sed nunquam infeliciores fuerunt; complures enim historici, qui omnes fide satis digni sunt, narrant, in exercitu Atheniensi fere quadraginta millia militum vel interfecta vel capta esse." Quum cognita clades esset, nemo fuit qui Atheniensium misereretur; nam manifestum omnibus fuit causam eorum non esse justam, eosque hoc bellum inituros non fuisse, si armis suis alibi uti potuissent.

1. *Ea*—§ 33. 2. *Oppugno* and *Impugno*—I attack—govern the acc.; *Repugno*—I oppose or resist—governs the dat. 3. *Datus esset*—Obs. the tense; not *daretur*; after the army had been given, then they would subdue. 4. *Subigo, redigo, imminuo.* The first signifies "to reduce, conquer," as above. The second "to reduce" from one state to another, as, He reduced them to slavery—*Eos in servitutem redegit.* The third, "to reduce, make less," as, Their numbers were reduced—*Eorum numerus imminutus est.* 5. *Susciperent.* They undertook to finish the work—*Susceperunt se opus perfecturos esse.* They undertook the building of the bridges—*Pontes ædificandos suscepérunt.* They undertook to defend him—*Eum defendendum suscepérunt,* or, *Sibi sumpserunt ut eum defenderent.* 6. *Satis.* He is not sufficiently learned—*Non satis doctus est.* He

is not *sufficiently* learned to know this—*Non tam doctus est ut hoc sciat*. It is not *sufficient* (enough) that we should abstain from error—*Non satis est nos ab erroribus abstinere*. He said that the Roman forces would scarcely be *sufficient* to feed his dogs—*Dixit copias Romanas vix suffecturas esse ad canes suos pascendos*. One world is not *sufficient* for (does not satisfy) the Pellæan young man—*Unus orbis Pellæo juveni non sufficit*. Let these things *suffice*—*Hæc sufficiant*. *Suffice* it to say—*Satis sit dicere*. 7. *Qui miseretur*. Predicate in clause of rel. It is not intended to affirm that "there was no one," but that "no one pitied."

## LII.

Motezuma Secundus, qui regum Mexicanorum nonus fuisse dicitur, ultimus fuit principum indigenarum qui in Mexico regnarunt; eo enim imperante, Hispani, duce Cortesio, auctoritatem suam ibi constituerunt. Cortesius captum Motezumam misit qui seditionem sedaret quam formidolosiores esse putavit quam ut eam ipse coerceret; sed princeps infelix, in capite ictus lapide, quem aliquis in turba in eum conjecerat, mortuus est paucis post diebus quam hoc vulnus accepit. Sunt qui credi velint eum Cortesii ipsius manu periisse, affirmantes eum voluisse ab homine liberari cujus conspectum timeret; sed certum est historicos ejus temporis non modo non dixisse sed ne suspicatos quidem esse rem ita se habuisse; nec verisimile est principem tam consideratum quam Cortesius fuit, pignus libenter dimissurum fuisse in quo maxima ejus securitas constabat.

1. *Ultimus principum qui*—§ 34. 2. *Duce Cortesio*—Under the *guidance* or *management* of Cortez. Under the auspices and guidance of Cortez—*Cortesio auspice et duce*. The *auspex* took the omens before entering on any business, and it was from him the authority to proceed issued, and therefore he was the principal person in the matter; the same person might act in the secondary capacity of *Dux*—"conductor or manager"—or he might entrust this part of the business to another. The same distinction holds between *auspicium* and *ductus*, thus, *auspicio Fabii* indicates that Fabius was the *principal* person; *ductu Fabii*, that the matter was *conducted* by him, but not perhaps on his own *authority*; conjoined, *auspicio et ductu Fabii*—Under the auspices and management of Fabius, i.e., he was both *principal* and *manager*. 3. *Quem aliquis in eum conjecerat*, or, *quo aliquis eum petiverat*. *Aliquis*—"some one or other," not known who. 4. *Postquam*, elegantly separated. Compare *Præquam*, § 56. 5. *Credi velint*. He will have it to be so—*Vult ita esse*. Some will have it that he is entitled to praise—*Nonnullis placet ei laudem deberi*. 6. *Timeret*—*indirect*, not a sentiment of the historian's; *timebat* would imply that the present historian thought Cortez feared the sight of Motezuma, whereas *timeret* does not indicate that he entertained this opinion. 7. *Ejus temporis*. *Ejus* is necessary to define *temporis*—§ 1. 8. *Rem ita se habuisse*—XXXV. *Habuisse* is *pluperf.*, as being past with reference to *suspiciatos esse*. 9. *Sed certum est*. This introduces the sentiment of the writer, and the rest is therefore *direct*. 10. *Quam Cortesius fuit*. *Fuit* is necessary, be-

cause *Cortesi* requires a different verb and mood from *principem*. So, He wrote such a book as Livy's history—*Talem librum scripsit qualis Livii historia est*; were *est* omitted here, the meaning would be—He wrote such a book as Livy's history (*wrote*). He rendered his enemies as kind as his friends—*Inimicos suos tam benignos reddidit quam amicos* (as he rendered his friends), or, *quam amici fuerunt*, i.e., as his friends were. But, They say that no one is so blind as he that wont see—*Ferunt neminem tam cœcum esse quam eum* (as they say that *he is*) *qui videre nolit*; here *neminem* and *eum* are the subjects of the same verb, mood, and tense, and therefore *esse* needs not to be repeated with *eum*.

## LIII.

In pugna Cannensi tam gravem cladem acceperant Romani, ut quum Romam nunciata esset concilium convocaretur deliberandi causâ utrum defendi urbs posset, annon optimum esset cives eos qui superstites essent, derelictâ Italiâ, in aliam terrarum orbis partem migrare. Scipio, cui postea cognomen Africano fuit, quum audisset quid in hoc concilio ageretur, stricto gladio ingressus est, et iis qui aderant ignaviam exprobrans, exclamavit se rempublicam nunquam deserturum neque ab aliis deserui passurum. Non necessarium est dicere quantum hæc animi fortitudo Romanis profuerit.

1. In pugna Cannensi. The battle fought at Cannæ—*Proelium ad* (beside or near) *Cannas factum*. The victory of Cannæ—*Victoria ad Cannas parata*. 2. Qui superstites essent—Indirect, to form part of the subject of deliberation. This word has been found in a surviving fragment of Ennius—*Hoc verbum in superstitio fragmento Ennii inventum est*. He survived the interview, the liberties of his country—*Superfuit congressui; patriæ libertati*. 3. Cives, derelicta Italia, migrare—That the citizens, having abandoned Italy, should remove. 4. Terrarum orbis—"The world, the earth." *Mundus*—"The world, the universe," of which the earth forms only a part; therefore *mundus* will not do here. Such expressions as "The Roman world," "the heathen world," which mean only a part of the world or earth, are made without *terrarum*—*Orbis Romanus, orbis Ethnicus*. One world does not satisfy Alexander—*Unus orbis Alexandro non sufficit*. 5. Cognomen. So long as "surnamed" can be made with the aid of *cognomen*, it is better to avoid *cognomino*. They surnamed him Africanus—*Ei cognomen Africano indiderunt*, or, *Ei cognomen Africani dederunt*—VI. 6. Is ignaviam exprobrans—Casting up cowardice to them. They upbraided him with ingratitude—*Ei animum ingratum exprobrarunt*. He upbraided me with being ungrateful—*Mihi exprobravit quod ingratus essem*. He upbraided me with having said so—*Mihi exprobravit quod ita dixissem*; *quod ingratus essem* and *quod ita dixissem* are his sentiments, not mine, and therefore indirect; they also stand for an acc. after the verb. I was upbraided with having said so—*Mihi exprobratum est quod ita dixissem*; *quod ita dixissem* forms the subject of *exprobratum est*, and is subj., as, I do not choose to admit whether I said so or not. If the thing is not mentioned *wherewith* a person is upbraided, *upbraid* is something like *chide*, and *fault with*, and is made by *objurgo*, as, They began to upbraid me—*Me objurgare coeperunt*.

## LIV.

Anno Romæ quingentesimo octogesimo sexto, Paulus Æmilius, cujus pater quadraginta octo ante annis in pugna Cannensi interfectus erat, sexaginta et unum annos natus consul iterum factus, contra Macedones missus est quorum copię Græcis, eo tempore Romanorum sociis, diu molestæ fuerant, et non semel victrices quum contra exercitus Romanos pugnarent. Æmilius, priusquam belli administrationem suscepit, quum senatui tum populo dixit, milites quibus priores consules in Macedonia præfuissent ducibus suis haud satis paruisse; si tamen ipse dux esset futurus, se veterem disciplinam, sine quâ nihil profici posset, restitutum esse, nec passurum milites ulla ex consiliis suis impedire, aut, quid faciendum esset, præscribere; se imperium his conditionibus accipere; siquem tamen scirent, qui melius iis placiturus esset, se ei libenter cessurum esse.

1. *Iterum*. He was made consul for the first, second, third time—*Consul primum, iterum, tertium factus est*. 2. *Molestas*—XLII. 3. *Non semel*—Not once, i.e., oftener than once. When "not once" means "not so much as once," it is made by *ne semel quidem*. Compare *non unus* and *ne unus quidem*— (§ 28). He did not tell me once—*Ne semel quidem mihi dixit*. Once in a year, month—*Semel in anno, mense*. I told you once and again—*Tibi sæpius (aliquoties) dixi*. He came at once (immediately)—*Statim venit*. For another use of "at once," see XLV. 1. 4. *Victrices* is the fem. adj.—XXXI. 5. *Suscepit* is indic. after *priusquam*, because he *did* actually undertake it, although he did something else beforehand. 6. *Dixit*. What follows is indirect. 7. *Esset futurus*. Compare *futuri sumus*—XXVI. 8. *Nihil profici*. *Profici* is impersonal, and *nihil* acc. of *measure* or *extent*. *Proficere* is "to derive profit or benefit," as, We have profited by his example—*Ejus exemplo profecimus*. We have benefited nothing, i.e., derived no good—*Nihil (to no extent, in no degree) profecimus*. *Prosum*—"I do good to, or benefit," as, You have benefited the state—*Civitati profuistis*. 9. *Faciendum esset*—Was necessary or requisite to be done. 10. *Accipere*—imperf. tense. 11. *Placiturus esset*—Was likely to please. *Placeret* would mean here "was pleasing," the subj. being necessary.

## LV.

Duo viri illustres, quibus Thebæ libertatem suam acceptam retulerunt, quorumque nomina nunquam e memoria excidere possunt, fuerunt Pelopidas et Epaminondas; qui adeo non æmuli fuerunt, ut, dum ambo vivebant, nullum iniretur ab altero consilium, quod amicissime cum altero non communicaretur. Pelopidas nobili loco ortus fuit, omniumque qui Thebis erant maximas possessiones habuit; etsi difficile est dictu utrum ditior an generosior fuerit. Epaminondæ (*dat.*)

contra, perferenda fuit paupertas, cujus tamen mala non visus est sentire; nam locupletari ab amico suo potuisset, qui ei frustra instituit ut partem fortunarum suarum acciperet.

1. *Acceptam retulerunt.* They were indebted to him for their knowledge of letters—*Scientiam literarum ei acceptam retulerunt.* I consider myself indebted to you for the ability to reply—*Tibi acceptum refero quod respondere possum.* We are indebted for all these things to the labours of our parents—*Hæc omnia parentum nostrorum laboribus debemus.* Lacedæmon was indebted to Lycurgus—*Lycurgus bene de Lacedæmone meritus est, i.e.,* he was a benefactor to Lacedæmon, or deserved well of Lacedæmon. The last sentence could not be made by either of the verbs employed in the previous ones, because *nothing special* is mentioned for which Lacedæmon was indebted. 2. *Adco non*—XXI. 3. *Dum vivebant, or, quum viverent.* 4. *Communicaretur*—subj., the predicate being in the rel. clause. 5. *Loco or genere.* *Familia* is rarely used in this sense, but in that of "household," including servants, slaves, &c. *Domus* is frequently used in the sense of "a house, family," as, The manners of that house (family)—*Mores ejus domus.* The crimes of that house were numerous—*Scelera ejus domus multa fuerunt.* The royal house (family)—*Regia domus.* 6. *Omnium.* This use of "any" in the sense of "all" is common. 7. *Difficile est dictu*—Whether he was more rich or generous is a *thing* difficult to be said—VIII. 1. *Ditior an generosior*—The sign of the comparative does not require to be repeated in Eng. before "generous." Compare "more difficult and dangerous"—XIII. 8. *Perferenda fuit.* "Have," "had" with the inf. is frequently the Eng. sign of the part. in *du*s. Forces had to be raised—*Copie conscribendæ erant.* I had to undergo difficulties—*Difficultates mihi subeundæ fuerunt.* You will have to do this—*Hoc tibi faciendum erit.* 9. *Paupertas, and Pauperies*—"Poverty, want of the comforts of life." *Egestas*—"Extreme poverty, want of the necessities of life." 10. *Fortunarum*—XLIX.

## LVI.

Romani, quum cœperunt cum Carthaginiensibus contendere, rei navalis admodum ignari fuerunt; et non semel victi, timuerunt cum hoste congredi, cujus scientiam multo majorem quam suam esse invenerunt. Junius Consul classi magnæ fuerat præfectus, eam jussus in Siciliam transportare; quod simul atque Carthalo cognovit, sublatiis anchoris, se consuli objecit, qui, tamen proelium noluit prius committere, quam sibi Quæstor (sese junxisset.) Quum res ita se haberent, gubernatores quidam Carthaginienses, certis signis prævidentes tempestatem citò orituram esse, Carthaloni suaserunt ut in portum vicinum confugeret. Quo facto, tutus fuit; sed naves omnes Romanæ vel ad scopulos allisæ vel ad terram dejectæ sunt.

1. *Rei navalis.* So, Military, rural, public affairs—*Res militaris, rustica, publica.* 2. *Non semel*—LIV. 3. *Timuerunt*—XX. 4. *Quam suam esse.* *Esse* is needed only once—LII. 5. *Majorem.* She had a su-



perior title to be worshipped—*Dignior fuit quæ coleretur*. His bravery was so superior that, &c.—*Ejus virtus adeo excelluit ut, &c.* 6. *Junius consul*. *Consul* is merely descriptive of *Junius*, and therefore follows it; So, *Roma urbs*. Were the order *Consul Junius*, *Junius* would be descriptive of *consul*, distinguishing him from the other consul. 7. *Fuerat præfectus*. The verb *præsum* will not do here, as it implies that the person is *already* in command—XIX. 8. *Quod quum*—compare XXXIV. 9. *Objicio*—"I throw in the way of." *Obsto*—"I stand in the way of." A law stood in the way of his being raised to this honour—*Lex obstitit quominus ad hunc honorem proveheretur*. I will oppose (stand in the way of) your receiving this—*Obstabo ne hoc accipias*. 10. *Proelium committere*, or *certamen inire*. To bring to an engagement—*In certamen perducere*. To come to a general engagement with one—*Cum summis copiis cum aliquo pugnare*. To try an engagement—*Certamen tentare*. An engagement took place—*Certamen (proelium) factum est*. 11. *Tutus*—Free from danger—XXXIII.

## LVII.

Delos, insula in medio Cycladum, primo fluctuans insula fuisse, et postea fixa atque immobilis facta esse dicitur. Sacra habita est propterea quod Apollo et Diana ibi nati sunt; quorum ille clarum oraculum in ea habuit, nec minus celebrem fontem, ad quem ritus varii facti sunt. In insula fuerunt multa magnifica ædificia, quorum inclytissimum pretiosissimumque fuit Apollinis templum, quod Plutarchus dicit magnæ antiquitatis fuisse et tam mirâ arte constructum esse, ut dignum esset quod inter miracula mundi numeraretur. Nemini, qui prohiberi potuit, permissum est ut in Delo moreretur. Qui morbo ullo mortifero aut periculoso laborabant, ad unam ex vicinis insulis asportari jussi sunt.

1. *Propterea quod*—lit. "on this account that." 2. *Ibi nati sunt*—XLVI. 3. *Ille*—§ 15. 4. *Ad quem*, or *apud quem*. In such a case as this *ad* and *apud* signify "at, beside, near." *Ad* is used with verbs either of motion or rest, *apud* never with verbs of motion to. The fleet was seen off (near) Artemisium—*Classis ad (or apud) Artemisium visa est*. 5. *Qui prohiberi potuit*. This clause is merely explanatory or modifies the statement. 6. *Mortifer*—"Mortal, deadly, bringing or causing death," as *Mortiferum vulnus*. *Mortalis*—"mortal, subject to death." 7. *Morbo laborabant*. *Fame laborare*—To labour under famine. *Febre laborare*—To labour under or be ill of a fever. He was dangerously ill of a disease—*Graviter morbo laborabat (agrorabat)*, or *Graviter æger morbo fuit*. To remove a disease—*Morbum depellere*.

## LVIII.

Augusto mense, anno millesimo quingentesimo nonagesimo septimo, legatus regis Poloniæ, quum in Angliam improvisò pervenisset, ad Elizabetham Reginam sine morâ introductus est, dixitque se venisse orantem ut querendi causæ, quas pa-

tria sua haberet quæque Anglis ignotæ esse non possent, statim removerentur; alioqui regem dominum suum ea facturum esse quæ ad sese defendendum necessaria essent. Elizabetha irata facta est atque ita respondit; "Ego, igitur, quæ prohibui quominus tu dominusque tuus de quo loqueris a Turcis opprimeremini, præmium aliud nullum quam hoc accipio. Quadraginta jam anni sunt quum regnare cœpi, sed talem orationem, qualis hoc tempore habita est, antea nunquam audiui. Ne expectes ut tibi faveam, quoad minus insolens esse didiceris."

1. *Legatus regis.* But if a verb such as "came" were connected with "from," thus, An ambassador came from the king—*Legatus a rege venit.*
2. *Introductus est*—used literally. These riches introduced luxury—*Hæ divitiæ luxuriam invexerunt.* To introduce laws, wickedness—*Leges, nequitiam invehere.*
3. *Regem dominum.* *Regius* signifies "royal, belonging to a king," and of course cannot be used here. His Majesty said so—*Rex ita dixit.* Her Majesty—*Regina.* "His Highness," "His Grace," "His Lordship," are similarly rendered by the titles of the persons to whom they are applied. So, Your Majesty is wise—*Rex (voc.), sapiens es.*
4. *Iratus*—"Angry," as on a particular occasion or for a particular reason. *Iracundus*—"Angry, irascible, habitually angry, or naturally inclined to be angry." He was angry with me—*Mihi iratus fui.* I was angry at his rashness—*Ejus temeritati iratus fui.*
5. *Igitur*—"therefore." *Tum* is not the word here, because "then" introduces as it were an inference from what goes before, and is equal to "therefore."
6. *Prohibui quominus tu dominusque, &c.*—"prevented by which the less you and your master were oppressed." *Prohibui te dominumque quominus, &c.,* would not be correct, for they were passive, and the restraint was laid not on them, but on the Turks.—Compare IV.
7. *Quum regnare cœpi, or ex quo regnare cœpi.* In addition to what was remarked on "since," under X., it may be observed that *post* and *postquam* in this sense are generally used in connection with a pluperf. in the other or principal clause. *Since* his retreat into Wales he had drawn together an army—*Postquam in Valliam recessit, exercitum conscripserat.* *Since* the days of Augustus, there had been no Emperor so good—*Post Augusti tempora imperator nullus tam bonus fuerat.*

## LIX.

Cum Epaminonda orta est occiditque potestas Thebana. Ante ejus tempus Thebæ inter Græciæ civitates non fuerant insignes; eoque mortuo, in priorem obscuritatem delapsæ sunt. Bello inter Thebanos et Lacedæmonios, dum illustris hicce imperator non solum ducis verum etiam gregarii militis officio fungebatur, vulnus mortiferum in pectore accepit. Ex acie in castra delatus, simul atque vocem recepit, num hostes clypeum sibi cadenti ademissent interrogavit. Quem servatum esse certior factus, ferri ad se jussit; quo facto, eum ut laborum gloriæque suæ socium osculatus est. Tum utri vicissent, rogavit, et ubi dictum ei est hostem victum fugere,

"Quum tamdiu," inquit, "vixerim ut hunc diem videam, mihi tempus est moriendi." Tum manu suâ a vulnere amotâ, jaculum hamatum, quo transfixus est, extrahendum curavit, animamque statim efflavit.

1. *Bello*, or *in bello*. 2. *Acies*—"The field of battle;" or "an army drawn up in battle array." *Acies instruere*—To draw up in order of battle. *Agmen*—"An army in marching order." *Exercitus* is the general word for "an army," and means properly or primarily "A body of trained or exercised men." 3. *Vox*—"Speech, voice, or utterance." *Sermo*—"Speech, language." *Oratio*—"A speech, oration." 4. *Quem* connects this sentence with what precedes, more closely than *eum* would do. 5. *Ad se*—"to him," i.e. to the place where he was. *Sibi* would mean "to him" for his use. 6. *Utri*—§ 21. 7. *Hostem victum fugere*—That the enemy having been defeated was fleeing.

## LX.

Haud omnino certum est quo anno Cæsar in Galliam perverit; sunt enim qui dicant eum Româ profectum esse anno urbis sexcentesimo nonagesimo septimo, sed alii, quibus forsitan credi potius debet, affirmant expeditionem triennio ante susceptam esse. Ipse memoriæ prodidit partem majorem eorum quæ in Gallia perfecti, atque ex ipsius verbis colligi potest futurum non fuisse ut regio tam facile domaretur, nisi incolæ inter sese dissensissent. Alius historicus dixit discordiam, quæ inter principes Gallicos fuerit, Romanis utiliore quam ipsorum virtutem fuisse. Hæ barbaræ gentes, quæ bellum inter se sæpe habebant, ita stultæ egerunt, non quod Cæsarem victorem esse vellent sed quia finitimis suis invidabant, et ut victoriæ gloria omnis ad se ipsas solas redundaret.

1. *Haud omnino*, or *non omnino*. The position of *non* after *omnino*, would materially affect the meaning; thus, *Omnino non certum est*—it is altogether not certain, i.e., it is entirely uncertain. 2. *Debet*—§ 48. 3. *Triennio antè*, or *tribus antè annis*—Time when. 4. *Eorum quæ*—§ 24. 5. *Ipsius*, and *ipsorum* in following sentence—§ 11. 6. *Futurum fuisse ut regio domaretur* is the periphrastic fut. perf. inf. pass.—§ 42. 7. *Fuerit*. Between the Jews and Samaritans there subsisted an implacable hatred—*Inter Judæos et Samaritanos intercedebat implacabile odium*. The king restored the harmony which had formerly subsisted—*Rex concordiam restituit quæ ante fuerat*. 8. *Non quod*—§ 53.

## LXI.

Duci Sullii, qui aerarii (*gen.*) præfectus fuerat, visum non est id aut aliud ullum munus publicum retinere postquam regni administratio Mariæ commissa est. Regina quæ sciebat quam benè se semper gessisset, eum invitavit ut ad se in re-

giam veniret, dixitque se gratias non mediocres ei debere ob ea quæ sibi, marito suo qui nuper manu impia perisset, totique regno jam fecisset, et libenter ei ullum præmium datum esse quod ei optabile videretur. Dux præmium recusavit, et ita locutus est: "Tu, quæ ad potestatem jam provecta es, regi, omnium quos Gallia unquam vidit optimo succedis; permitte mihi ut te hortor ut nobile ejus exemplum omnibus in rebus sequaris. Quum filius tuus nondum decem annos natus sit, tibi diu regnandum erit. Faxit Deus ut quum regnare desieris imperiumque principi adulto tradideris, omnes confiteri cogantur mulierem bene regnare posse."

1. *Visum est.* *Videor* is used impersonally when it means "it seems fit, meet, proper, right, good." He was permitted to grant them such terms as he *thought fit* (i.e. as he *might think fit*)—*Et permissum est ut is daret eas condiciones quas ei videretur*; the last part of the sentence is elliptical, and would be in full *quas dare ei videretur*—"which it might seem good to him to grant." When "think" is thus equivalent to "seem," it is always made by *videor*, as, I think it strange—*Mihi mirum videtur*; *mirum puto* will not do. I think you negligent—*Mihi negligens videris*. The soldiers thought it desirable—*Militibus optabile visum est*. 2. *Munus*—"An office, charge, or trust" committed to a person. *Officium*—"An office, duty binding on one, a moral duty or obligation." Compare LIX., where Epaminondas is said to have "performed the office not only of a general, but also of a common soldier," i.e., the duty binding on a general and a common soldier. 3. *Videretur*—Which might appear; *videbatur* would imply, that the queen thought he had already made up his mind as to what was desirable. 4. *Recusavit* is milder and more respectful here than *rejecit*. 5. *Optimo omnium quos*—§ 34.

## LXII.

Marcus Porcius Cato, Censor, Tusculi natus est, primusque Porciæ gentis Romam habitatum ivit. Multis præditus fuit virtutibus, inter quas temperantia enituit; et constanti morum gravitate tam insignis fuit ut non rarè nomen ejus ad summam austeritatem significandam adhibitum sit. Mirum videri potest, eum, etsi doctrinæ deditum, literas Græcorum contempsisse, easque Roma penitus excludi voluisse; sed multi credunt eum ita fecisse, timentem ne, si Græcorum doctrina Romanam allata esset, eorum luxuria eam comitaretur. Recens auctor verè dixit pretiosum ejus de re rusticâ librum etiam meliorem futurum fuisse, si scriptores Græci ei noti fuissent.

1. *Romam habitatum ivit*—Went to Rome to reside. Camillus went to live in exile at Ardea—*Camillus Ardeam exulatum ivit*. 2. *Præditus*—XXVIII. 3. *Summam*. It is the height of madness to act so—*Est summa dementia ita facere*. He maintained that it was the height of folly—*Afirmavit esse summam stultitiam*. He thought it the height of absurdity—*Ei absurdissimum visum est*. Their pride proceeded to such a height that they forgot their old friends—*Eorum superbia eo*

*processit ut veteres amicos obliviscerentur.* He rose to such a height of passion, that all were frightened—*Ed iracundias processit ut omnes terrerentur.* The height was three feet—*Altitudo fuit trium pedum* (the height was a height of three feet). The wall was two feet in height—*Murus duos pedes altus fuit.* 4. *Adhibitum est*—Used, employed. These things are not to be used—*Hæc non sunt utenda.* They were ill used (treated) by the enemy—*Ab hoste male tractati sunt.* Virtue used (was wont) to be honoured—*Virtus honorari solebat.* 5. *Deditus*—Devoted, given up, addicted to. *Devoveo*—I devote, give up as a sacrifice or offering, consecrate to. He devoted himself to study—*Se studio dedit.* He devoted himself to the infernal deities—*Se infernis diis devovit.* He devoted himself to the good of his countrymen—*Se utilitati civium suorum dedit.* He devoted himself to destruction—*Se ad exitium devovit.* He devoted his whole attention to these things—*Totum animum in hæc res intendit.* 6. *Alata esset*—pluperf. in relation to *comitaretur.* 7. *Etiæm* with the comparative heightens its force. *Etiæm atque etiæm*—Again and again. He is still alive—*Adhuc* (up to this) *vivit.* I admonished him, but still he would not obey—*Eum admonui, attamen parere noluit.*

## LXIII.

Mortuo Nervâ, Trajanus, qui genere Hispanus fuit, in imperium successit, eique libentissimè obtemperatum est. Quo tempore ad hunc honorem est proventus, quadraginta duos annos natus est, quæ res uni ex ejus amicis occasionem præbuit dicendi, principem quem haberent nec tam juvenem esse ut esset inexpertus, nec tam senem ut iners esset. Quam bene rempublicam administraverit, omnibus notum est; sed inter bona omnia quæ fecit, laudabilius nihil fuit quam quod pauperes educandos curavit. Tam caram Romani memoriam ejus habuerunt, ut, quum ulli novo imperatori gratularentur, ei Augusti fortunam et Trajani bonitatem optarent.

1. *Eique.* *Ei* is necessary—§ 66. 2. *Quæ res*—XXV. 1. 3. *Occasionem dicendi*—Occasion to say, or an opportunity of saying. When "occasion" means "cause," the Lat. is *causa*, as, This was the occasion of his death—*Hæc mortis ejus causa fuit*; or, *Hoc effectit ut is moreretur.* To give occasion to a war—*Causam belli præbere.* "Occasion" = "time" is made by *tempus*, as, On this occasion (at this time)—*Hoc tempore.* On all occasions—*Omnibus temporibus.* "Occasion" sometimes signifies "need," as, They had occasion for an army—*Iis exercitû opus erat.* 4. *Memoriam ejus*—Their recollection of him; this is the objective gen.—§ 16. 5. *Optarent.* *Opto*—I wish, express my wish. *Volo*—I wish, have the will. *Desidero*—I wish, long for, yearn for, miss or feel the want of.

## LXIV.

Quum Lysander, dux Spartanus, Lampsacum cepisset, Athenienses cum classe propè ducentarum navium eum insecti atque in proelium statim perducere conati sunt. Hoc

tamen perficere non potuerunt; Lysander enim per dies complures pugnam detrectavit, ut, quum timere videretur, securitatem insolentem Atheniensibus injiceret, eosque, ubi occasio commoda oblata esset, aggrediretur. Eo (*adv.*) verisimilius fuit hunc dolum processurum esse, quod propinquus nullus portus nec urbs erat, et commeatus ex locis longinquis erat subvehendus. Alcibiades, qui ad Thraciam recesserat, quum audisset Atheniensibus e navibus nocte egredi, et interdiu hosti insultare, venit ut eos periculi cui sese objicerent, admoneret; eum tamen audire noluerunt, et tandem magnâ cæde profligati sunt.

1. *Videretur. Videor and appareo.* The former signifies "to appear, seem, have the appearance of," *whether it actually be so or not*; as, Aristides appears just, *i.e.*, has the appearance of being just, whether he is so or not, therefore—*Aristides justus videtur*. The latter means "to appear" in the sense of "to be visible, show itself, come in sight;" hence *apparet*—"it is clear, evident, manifest." Let the dry land appear—*Sicca terra appareat*. An angel appeared to Abraham—*Angelos Abrahamo apparuit*. It appears (seems) you do not know—*Nescire videris*. It appears (is evident) you do not know—*Te nescire apparet*. 2. *Processurum, VI.* 3. *Verisimilius.* There is no likelihood of his returning—*Non verisimile est eum rediturum esse*. In all likelihood he will come—*Omnino verisimile est eum venturum esse*. There is little likelihood of his coming—*Parum verisimile est, &c.* There is not the least likelihood—*Minime verisimile est*. It is most likely—*Verisimillimum est*. 4. *Propinquus.* "Near" is sometimes an adj. as here, sometimes a prep., sometimes an adv. 5. *Insultare.* He insulted me—*Mihi (or in me) insultavit*. 6. *Admoneo* takes acc. and gen., if the thing "warned of" be *presently* or *then* existing; and the acc. and *de* with abl., if the "warning" be against something *future*. It may have two accs., when the second is some general word, as *id, hoc, &c.* Here he warned them of the danger *then* impending. But, He warned me of the danger that was likely to result—*Me de periculo quod oriturum esset admonuit*. He warned me of this—*Me hoc admonuit*.

## LXV.

Sub initium anni millesimi quingentesimi octogesimi quinti, Elizabetha, quæ aliis de rebus sollicita aliquamdiu fuerat, conjurationem contra se initam esse certior facta est. Gulielmus Parius, interrogatus, confessus est se conjurasse ut reginam interficeret, atque ex Gallia in Angliam ad eam ipsam rem rediisse. Dixit, quum postea secum reputasset quam scelestum tale consilium esset, se pugionem, quo uti in animo habuisset, deposuisset. "Tandem tamen," inquit, "quum in libro, qui in manus meas incidit, legissem, principes esse quorum vitæ (*dat.*) parci non debeat, incitatus sum ut ad prius consilium meum redirem; et verissimum est, nisi comprehensus essem, futurum fuisse ut regina interimeretur.

1. *Sub*—"about" in reference to time, commonly signifies *a little before*, About the close of the year—*Sub anni exitum*. About the same time—*Sub idem tempus*. The difference between the use of *sub* and that of *circa*, is, that the former has reference to no specific time, while the latter has. He died about 200 years afterwards—*Ducentis circiter post annis mortuus est*. *Sub* cannot be used in such a sentence as the following, where time is not concerned:—About 200 soldiers were sent—*Circa ducenti milites missi sunt*. 2. *Ad eam ipsam rem*—§ 1. 3. *In animo habuisset*, or *Ei in animo fuisset*. It was intended to go out by night—*Consilium fuit prodeundi* (or *prodire*) *noctu*; the intention being general, or no particular party being mentioned whose the intention was. Sometimes "intending" is made by the part. in *rus*—See § 43. 4. *In libro* implies that it was somewhere in the compass of the book; *libro* without *in* would imply that the book was entirely and solely on this subject. So, *Me in literis certiorum fecit*—He informed me in a letter, implying that the letter contained other things as well as this information, and that it was not written with this as the principal object. But, *Me literis certiorum fecit*—He informed in (or by) a letter, implying that the letter was written solely or chiefly to convey the information.

## LXVI.

Glauco Demyli filius Anthedone in Bœotia natus est. Pausanias dicit eum primo terram colere solitum esse, sed quum vomis ex aratro fortè decidisset, eum manu suâ id fecisse quod alius nemo sine malleo facere potuisset, ideoque ad aliud opus statim missum esse. Olympiam ut pugil ivit, sed, quum artis pugnandi imperitus esset, tam graviter vulneratus est ut omnes qui viderunt quantum sanguinis amisisset, eum casurum esse et victum iri putarent. Ei pater exclamavit, "Mi care fili, nonne vomerem meministi?" et fama est eum, his verbis incitatum, summis viribus usum esse unoque ictu fortunato victoriam reportasse.

1. *Primò*—"At first, in the first place or instance." *Primum*—"First, for the first time." *Hannibal primò Alpes transiit*—Hannibal in the first place crossed the Alps (and then did something else.) *Hannibal primum Alpes transiit*—Hannibal crossed the Alps for the first time (he had never crossed them before.) *Hannibal primus Alpes transiit*—Hannibal was the first person that crossed the Alps. 2. *Fortè decidisset*—VII. This happened (took place) at Rome—*Hoc Romæ factum est*. His birth happened at Rome—*Romæ natus est*. His death happened at Rome—*Romæ mortuus est*. 3. *Meministi*. *Memini*—"I make mention of" takes the gen., or the abl. with *de*. 4. *Victoriam reportasse*. To improve a victory—*Victoriâ uti*.

## LXVII.

Nobiles Anglici, quum ab Joanne rege dissiderent, Philippo, Galliæ regi, persuaserunt ut filium suum Ludovicum, Delphinum, cum exercitu transmitteret. Quum Alexander, rex Scoticus, nuncium accepisset Ludovicum in Londinum

pervenisse, eò quam maximâ celeritate ivit, et, postquam ei gratulatus est, dixit necessarium hinc esse Joanni persuaderi justam querendi causam toti populo esse; nec minus illinc necessarium eos qui parere deberent prohiberi quominus auctoritati legitimæ resisterent. Joannes ipse dixit se consocium sibi non esse se quidquam fecisse quod injustum vocari posset; seque non prius destitutum esse quam potestatem quâ orbatum esset, recuperasset.

1. *Disiderent.* This is at variance with the scope of the history—*Hæc ab historia proposito abhorret.* 2. *Quam maxima celeritate,* or *quam celerrimè,* or *quam celerrimè potuit.* 3. *Persuaderi.* Obs. the use of *persuadeo* in this and the preceding sentence, with the difference of meaning and syntax. 4. *Eos prohiberi*—LVIII. 5. *Consocium*—XX.

## LXVIII.

Romani, quum Hernicos arma sumpsisse audivissent, nullamque iis causam ita faciendi esse crederent, legatos miserunt qui iis exprobrarent quod fœdus aliquot antè annis cum Româ factum violassent. Hernici, ægrè ferentes se ita tractari, legatis responderunt, se socios populi Romani jam non esse; fœdus quod commemoratum esset cum Tarquinio solo esse factum, et cum eo mortuum esse; ea quæ Romanis occasionem querendi præbuisent, ab hominibus privatis commissæ esse; et, si Romani bellum cuperent, paratos esse Hernicos cum iis pugnare. Hæc nequaquam talis oratio fuit qualem Romani expectaverant; bellumque genti superbæ statim indictum est.

1. *Audivissent et crederent*—In as much as they had heard and were believing. In this and similarly constructed sentences the sense requires an exception to the Rule "Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses." 2. *Arma sumpsisse.* To be in arms—*In armis esse.* To lay down arms—*Arma ponere* or *deponere.* To throw away one's arms—*Arma abjicere.* When *arma* and *tela* are opposed or conjoined, the former means "defensive arms," the latter "offensive arms." They used neither offensive nor defensive arms—*Nec telis nec armis usi sunt.* If, however, only one of the two kinds be mentioned at a time, they are made thus:—*Arma ad defendendum* and *Arma ad lacessendum.* 3. *Nullam causam*—No cause (of any sort)—XLV. 2. 4. *Ægrè ferentes.* He took it highly amiss that—*Ægerrime tulit quod,* or acc. and inf. 5. *Aliquot*—§ 30. 6. *Cum iis pugnare*—V. 7. *Paratos.* I will give you ready money—*Tibi præsentem pecuniam dabo.*

## LXIX.

Kennethus, qui regum Scoticorum id nomen secundus gessit, coronatus est anno mundi quater millesimo octingentesimo nono. Doluit patrem suum a Pictis crudeliter inter-



fectum, et injuriam quam primum ulcisci voluit; sed proximum certamen eum tot militibus orbaverat, ut aliud celeriter suscipi non posset. Picti, post victoriam quam adepti erant, superbiâ et insolentia insigniores quam antea fuerant facti sunt; et multi eorum voverunt se prius nunquam destituros esse quam Scoti penitus deleti essent. Attamen inter eorum nobiles fuerunt qui iis suaderent ut victoria, quippe quæ non virtute sed fraude parta esset, moderatè uterentur.

1. *Doluit.* He was grieved at his father's death—*Patris sui mortem doluit*, or *Patrem suum mortuum doluit*. He was grieved at his father's death by the Picts—*Patrem suum a Pictis interfectum doluit*. I am grieved that you have suffered such a calamity—*Doleo te tantam calamitatem passum esse*, or, *quod passus es*. 2. *Quam primum*—"As soon as possible." *Quum primum*—"When first, as soon as." 3. *Proximus* means the "nearest to," either *before* or *after*; therefore when we meet with such an expression as *Proximâ hebdomade*, the context must decide whether it means "*last week*" or *next week*." 4. *Post*—LVIII. 7. 5. *Quippe quæ*. I address you as being the oldest—*Te alloquor, quippe qui natu maximus sis*, or *Te alloquor utpote natu maximum, utpote* being used either with *qui* and the subj., or without *qui*, along with a part. or adj.

## LXX.

Paucis mensibus post finem belli Punici Secundi, Romani, instigantibus Atheniensibus, arma contra Philippum, Demetrii filium, Perseique patrem, sumpturunt. Non una Romanis causa hujus belli suscipiendi fuit. Philippum ob societatem, quam cum Hannibale inierat, oderunt; nec potuerunt auxilium Atheniensibus denegare, a quibus confessi sunt se multas ex optimis suis legibus accepisse. Philippus, ab Attalo et Ætolis adjunctus, iis aliquamdiu restitit, sed tandem a Flaminio consule victus, pacem petere coactus est, quæ data ei est eâ conditione ut Athenienses omitteret grandemque pecuniam solveret.

1. *Non una*—§ 28. 2. *Oderunt*—§ 46. 3. *Omitteret*—"Let alone, pass by, omit." He let alone the besieging of our men—*Obsessionem nostrorum omittit. Ut alios omittam*—Not to mention others. He let him into all his secrets—*Omnia consilia cum eo communicavit*. He was let down from a window—*E fenestra demissus est*. He will not let them speak—*Eos loqui non patietur*. He is alone—*Solus est*.

## LXXI.

Ennenses, quorum urbs in media Sicilia fuit, præsidium Romanum admittere coacti erant; sed postquam senserunt quam grave hoc onus esset, sese eo liberare statuerunt. Hoc tamen facile perfici non potuit; Pinarius enim, qui toti exer-

cisui, quem Romani ibi habebant, præerat, vigilantior fuit quam ut se imparatum impugnari pateretur. Eum adierunt et questi sunt urbem suam in magnum carcerem esse conversam, quum nemini, ut liberè ageret, permitteretur. Pinarius iis dixit, si fidelitati eorum plaudere potuisset, hoc eventurum non fuisse; claves urbis sibi esse commissas, seque ad arbitrium suum iis usurum esse.

1. *Media Sicilia.* The middle, top, bottom of the mountain—*Medius, summus, imus mons.* In the middle of the 12th century—*Medio seculo duodecimo.* 2. *Perfeci potuit.* "To be" is not the sign of the part. In *dus* here, for necessity is not implied, neither is it the sign of the fut., futurity not being implied; inability is to be expressed. 3. *Hoc eventurum non fuisse, or futurum non fuisse ut hoc fieret.* 4. *Arbitrium*—Discretion, will, pleasure. A man of great discretion—*Vir magna prudentia.* To surrender at discretion—*Sine conditionibus in ditionem venire.*

## LXXII.

Dionysius Lambinus Monstrolii in Picardia natus est anno Domini nostri millesimo quingentesimo decimo sexto. Simul atque erudiri coeptus est, incredibili literarum amore flagravat, et studia sua tam avide prosecutus est, ut, neglectâ re suâ familiari, rejectoque propinquorum suorum consilio, qui ei institerunt ut artem quæstuosam ingrederetur, totum animum in res intenderet quas dixit propter se esse expetendas, nec unquam posse ullâ fortunæ vicissitudine sibi adimi. Quum aliquot annos Parisiis in legendis optimis Græcis Latinisque auctoribus consumpsisset, in Italiam profectus est, ubi amicitiam cum multis viris doctis contraxit; Parisiosque reversus, professor philologiæ factus est. Amicos suos tam caros habuit, ut, quum Ramus ejus collega manu impiâ sicariorum cecidisset, moerore moreretur.

1. *Coeptus est*—§ 46. 2. *Institerunt.* *Insto*—"To urge, press," governs the dat., and is followed by *ut*. When it signifies "to be anxious, eager" to do a thing, it takes the inf., as, He strove to take the city before he went out of office—*Urbem capere, priusquam magistratu abiret, instabat.* 3. *Manu.* "Hand" used metaphorically, as, On all hands—*Ab omnibus partibus.* At hand—*Præsto.* He was at hand—*Adfuit.* To have a hand in anything—*Allicujus rei esse particeps.* I received bad treatment at their hands—*Ab iis male tractatus sum.*

## LXXIII.

Quidam Lollius, genere Samnis, Romanis ut obses traditus erat; sed quum effugisset, latronum exercitui sese junxit, unique ex vicinis civitatibus persuasit ut sibi unam ex urbibus suis daret, in qua omnis præda deponeretur. Romani,

qui qualis Lollius esset experti jam erant, adeo territi sunt, ut ambos consules ab alio bello quod non tam difficile videbatur revocatos ad hanc defectionem coercendam mitterent. Locus unde Lollius excursions facere solebat, intra paucos dies postquam exercitus Romani ad eum pervenerunt, captus est; sed urbs quam spoliis receptaculum fuisse diximus, a magno fortique exercitu defensa, tam diu et acriter restitit, ut haud multum abesset quin Romani ab incepto desisterent.

1. *Quidam Lollius*, or *nescio quis Lollius*—"One Lollius." This use of "one" before a proper name is disrespectful or contemptuous. 2. *Efugere* is "to escape from danger by flight," implying in the person a consciousness of danger and an effort to escape. *Evadere*—"To get out of danger," whether by one's own endeavours, or by those of other persons, or by accident. 3. *Desisteret. Desisto*—"I cease, or break off doing anything." *Cesso*—"I cease" when I have come to the end of a thing. *Loqui desistit*—He gives up speaking (before being done). *Loqui cessat*—He ceases speaking, is done speaking.

#### LXXIV.

Quanto odio jugum Romanum habitum sit, ex duabus rebellionibus, quæ a servis in Sicilia factæ sunt, disci potest; et insigne exemplum eorum quæ ab hominibus injustè oppressis atque in desperationem actis perfici possunt, bello contra Spartacum præbetur. Septuaginta octo servi, qui gladiatores fieri coacti erant, vincula ruperunt, et, duce Spartaco, copias nonnullas, quæ ad eos insequendos missæ erant, profligarunt. Alii, quum de eorum successu audiissent, sese iis celeriter junxerunt; et Spartacus tandem exercitui tam formidoloso præfuit, ut Romani, qui revera vix unquam majore in periculo fuerunt, aliquamdiu putarent hosti resisti non posse.

1. *Quanto* (dat.)—"What, or how great." Besides the uses of "what" specified in § 24, the following may be noted: (a.) "What," the interjection, as, What a pity it is!—*Quantopere dolendum est!* What a fool he is!—*Quam stultus est!* (b.) "What," interrogative and compound relative, as "He does not know what ploughing is," which sentence admits of two meanings; either, "He does not know what is the meaning of ploughing," or "He does not know to plough." In the first sense the Lat. will be—*Nescit quid sit arare*; and in the second—*Nescit arare*. By what is called the treaty of Madrid, Francis was restored to liberty—*Foedere Madritensi*, quod vocatur, *Franciscus in libertatem restitutus est*, which may have also the Eng.—"By the treaty of Madrid, as it is called, &c. In what has been called the Social war, or, In the Social war, as it has been called—*In eo bello quod Sociale appellatum est*. 2. *Potest* and *præbetur* have clauses for their subjects. 3. *Rumpo*—"to break, burst." *Frango*—"to break" with a cracking noise, as of wood. He broke the branch—*Ramum fregit*. The pipe burst—*Fistula rupta est*. 4. *Audiui eum*—I heard him. *Audiui de eo*—I heard of him.

## LXXV.

Copiæ Romanæ maximo objectæ sunt periculo Minucii consulis temeritate, qui se in vallem perducere passus erat, ubi ab Æquis undique obsessus est. Quum Nautius, alter consul, non adesset, Romanis nihil aliud relictum est nisi ut Dictatorem dicerent; et delegerunt Cincinnatum qui hoc honore jam fructus erat, quemque hoc tempore ut antea manu suâ arantem invenerunt. Dictator, exercitu celeriter conscripto, hostibus improvise supervenit; qui ipsi jam circumventi, in deditionem, certamine non tentato, venerunt, et sub jugum missi sunt. Minucius imperio privatus est, Dictatore ei dicente, exercitum ei qui artem belli non didicisset non debere committi.

1. *Undique, or ab omnibus partibus.* 2. *Nisi ut—*But to—§ 62. 3. *Delegerunt.* He gave me the choice of going away or being whipped—*Mihi fecit optionem (or potestatem) ut abirem aut verberarer.* 4. *Circumventi.* He surrounded the city—*Urbem circumvenit.* He surrounded the city with a wall—*Murum urbi circumdedit.* 5. *Imperio.* *Imperium et potestatem in republica habuit—*He held military and civil power in the state.

## LXXVI.

Quum exercitus Romanus ab Æquis victus esset, dictatorem dici placuit. Hoc novam militibus fiduciam iniecit; eorumque gaudium eo majus fuit quod imperium Servilio, viro rei militaris scientiâ insigni, commissum est. Servilius duo millia passuum ab hostibus castra posuit; et quum eos post victoriam valde negligentes factos esse perciperet, cum iis quam primum configere statuit. Unum ex suis tardius quam debebat proficiscentem, manu sua interfecit; quæ res ardorem totius exercitus adeo auxit ut Æqui, quum impetum sustinere non possent, perturbati fugerent atque ad castra sua redirent.

1. *Placuit.* "It is resolved, agreed upon," is commonly made by *placet*, the syntax of which is the acc. with inf.; but when a negative follows, *ut* or *ne*. It was resolved that another should be sent—*Placuit alium mitti.* They resolved that I should go—*Iis placuit me ire.* It was resolved that no army should be raised—*Placuit nequis exercitus conscriberetur.* But when one resolves to do something himself, *statuo* or *constituo* is used, as, They resolved to go—*Ire statuerunt.* Compare the use of *statuo* in the third sentence of this exercise. *Mihi non places—*I am not pleased with you. 2. *Eò majus quod.* For the use of *quod* see § 63. 3. *Commissum est—*"Confided to, entrusted to;" but "confide in, trust in," is *confido*. 4. *Rei militaris singular—*LVI. 5. *Ab hoste—*Distant from the enemy. This little town was at the distance of two miles from Jerusalem—*Hoc oppidulum duo millia passuum ab Hierosolymis distabat.* He remained for some time at a great distance—*Aliquamdiu magno in-*

*tervallo mansit.* The danger was distant, not immediate—*Periculum longinquum fuit, non præsens.* The time was too distant—*Tempus nimis longinquum fuit.* Keep at a distance from all dignities—*Ab omnibus dignitatibus abstinete.* 6. *Pest*—"Since," used in connection with the pluperf. "had become"—LVIII. 7. *Quæ res*—XXV.

## LXXVII.

Missus in Germaniam Digbius, qui de rebus ageret quæ omnibus videbantur difficillimæ maximique momenti esse, domum rediit mensibus minimum duobus citius quam quisquam eum venire potuisse putavit; atque interrogatus quomodo legationem administrasset, oravit ut ne reprehenderetur quod ea non perfecisset quæ fieri non possent; nunquam enim futurum fuisse ut talis expeditio susciperetur, si notum fuisset quam vana esset. "Vos," inquit, "qui nobiles hujus regni estis, qui labore vestro civitati profuistis, ipsique ut legati a rege adhibiti estis, non potestis omnino ignari esse difficultatum quæ semper subeundæ sunt in ullo tali opere quale id fuit quod mihi impositum est; sed precor ut me patienter audiat, et promitto fore ut aliquid discatis quod antea nesciebatis, nec dubito quin, re totâ intellectâ, me omni culpa liberaturi sitis."

1. *Minimum*, or *ad minimum*—"at least," i. e. at the lowest calculation. *Saltem*—"at least," used in expressing or stating an alternative. Remove him, or at least (if you don't remove him) order him to go away—*Eum remove, vel saltem abire jube.* With *minimum*, or *ad minimum* compare *ad summum* or *maximum*—"at most," i. e., at the highest calculation. There were two or at most three—*Fuerunt duo vel ad summum tres.* 2. *Duobus mensibus citius*—"Sooner by two months." 3. *Nunquam enim, &c.* An assertion, and therefore the acc. with inf.

## LXXVIII.

Anno millesimo quingentesimo septuagesimo nono deprehensum est conjurationem contra Hiberniam factam esse, et septingentos Hispanos et Italos a Papa et Philippo, Hispaniæ rege, missos, in eam insulam, nemine resistente, appulisse, castellumque minax extruere. Comes Ormondia, qui forte non procul aberat, quam maxima celeritate ivit et paucos cepit, a quibus didicit sex millia aliorum sine morâ ventura esse; tot arma, quot necessaria essent, allata jam esse; et conjuratos in animo habere Anglos Hiberniâ omnino expellere. Captum est castellum intra paucos dies postquam consideri coeptum est; sed victoria crudelitate obsidentium maculata est, qui, simulantes captivos plures esse quam qui

facile custodirentur, peregrinos gladio interfecerunt, et Hibernos suspenderunt.

1. *Quam maximâ celeritate* either with or without *potuit*. He indulged him as far as possible—*Et quantum fieri poterat, indulgebat*. He expressed himself in the fewest possible words—*Quam paucissimis verbis locutus est*. He resolved, if possible, to conciliate the king—*Statuit, si fieri posset, sibi regem conciliare*. It appeared scarcely possible for them to pay the debt—*Es alienum vis solvere posse videbantur*. I don't believe in the possibility of this—*Non credo hoc fieri posse*. Beyond the possibility of forgiveness—*Ultra quam ut ei ignosci possit*. 2. *Procul*. *Procul dubio*—Without doubt. With other substs. *procul* takes *a* or *ab* with *abl*. 3. *Plures*—XXVIII. On account of so numerous an offspring—*Ob tantam sobolem*.

## LXXIX.

Gallicæ quædam copiæ quæ in Scotiam pervenerant, sese in Letham oppidum concludere coactæ erant; et Elizabetha, Angliæ regina, quæ eas domum agere volebat, septem millia peditum et mille ducentos equites ad eam rem misit. Rex Gallicus summam operam dedit ut Angli revocarentur, sed Elizabethæ, quæ videbat quam necessarium esset toti consilio gentis Gallicæ resisti, nulla de causa persuaderi potuit ut exercitum suum subduceret. "Mihi," inquit, "æque ac regi Gallico licet milites, quocunque (mihi) placet, mittere." Legatus Gallicus ei dixit eam, quæ ullam militum suorum partem ibi haberet, recens fœdus violare; ad quod ea sedatè respondit non decere hominem e Gallia missum de violatis fœderibus queri.

1. *Concludere in oppidum*. The acc. is used with *in* because the notion of motion into is to be conveyed. So we find—*Se in regiam inclusit*—"He shut himself up in the palace," *i. e.* *went in* and shut himself up; and *Se in regiam inclusit*—"He shut himself up in the palace," implying that he was *already* in the palace, not that he *went in* for the purpose. 2. *Operam dedit ut Angli revocarentur*, or *Anglos revocando* (dat.) 3. *Causa*—"Account, reason." On this account—*Hanc ob causam*, or, *hâc de causâ*. He was banished from his country on account of his arrogance—*Ob* (or *propter*) *arrogantiam patriâ pulsus est*. 4. *Licet*—"There is liberty, it is allowed or lawful," according to human law or permission. *Fas est*—"It is lawful" according to divine law. They are at liberty (free)—*Liberi sunt*. They are at liberty to speak—*Is loqui licet*. They are set at liberty—*In libertatem sunt restituti*. 5. *Quocunque mihi placet*—Whithersoever it pleases me (to send them.) 6. *Quæ*—§ 50, 3.

## LXXX.

Xenophon narrat, Lacedæmonios, post cladem eorum ad Unidon acceptam, certiores factos Cononem, ducem Atheniensem, classem magnam parare murosque Athenarum a Lysandro dirutos reficere, et pecuniam ei ad has res a rege Persa-

rum suppeditari, statuisset hæc omnia dicere Teribazo, uni ex regis ducibus, eumque ad partes suas perducere; confisos, hoc pacto, regem adduci posse ut vel Athenienses omnino desereret societamque secuminiret, vel saltem desisteret pecuniam Cononi dare. Hoc amplius idem auctor dicit, Teribazum, etsi Lacedæmoniis faveret, tamen noluisse sibi hoc sumere ut quidquam faceret nisi regem prius consulisset; ideoque iter ad eum fecisse, Conone interim comprehenso atque in carcerem incluso.

1. *Cladem ad Onidon acceptam.* Compare LIII. 1. 2. *Partes—XXXI.* He was on the *side* of the Romans—*A Romanis* (or *a partibus Romanorum*) *stabat*. He resolved to *side* with the Romans—*A partibus Romanorum stare constituit*. On each side (or on both sides)—*Utrique*, or *ab utrisque partibus*. Three were alive, two on the *side* of the Argives, and one on *that* of the Lacedæmonians—*Tres fuerunt superstites, duo ex parte Argivorum, et unus ex Lacedæmoniorum*. Both *sides* claimed the victory—*Utrique sibi victoriam vindicarunt*. Which *side* gained the victory—*Utri vicerunt*. On the one *side* stood Jupiter, on the other Juno—*Hinc stetit Jupiter, illinc Juno*. He stood on the right *side* of the altar—*Ad dextram aræ partem stabat*. He was mortally wounded in the right *side*—*Vulnus mortiferum in dextro latere accepit*. 3. *Confisos.* *Fretus* would not do here, as it does not take the acc. and inf. 4. *Hoc pacto.* If by any means—*Siquid ratione*. By no means—*Nequaquam*. They took every means of testifying their joy—*Omnia fecerunt quibus lætitiæ suam testarentur*. By means of his armour-bearer—*Per armigerum*. 5. *Saltem—LXXVII.* 1. 6. *Hoc amplius—“This more.”* They were prevented from having any further communication with the tyrant—*Prohibiti sunt quominus ullum commercium ultra cum tyranno haberent*. They had proceeded further than was safe—*Ultra progressi erant quam tutum erat*. 7. *Prius* not *primo*, because it is in connection with one of two courses. The same distinction holds between *prior* and *primus*: thus, Hannibal and Scipio met, and Hannibal spoke first—*Hannibal et Scipio occurrerunt, et Hannibal prior locutus est*; if three or more persons were concerned, *primus* would be used. 8. *In carcerem incluso—LXXIX.* 1.

### LXXXI.

Bocchus, qui Jugurtham primo adjuverat, quum exercitum magnum amisisset neque expectaret ut Romanis ipse jam par esset, Marium certiores fecit se arma ponere velle, atque ab eo petivit ut duos homines fidos mitteret quibuscum colloquium habere posset. Sylla et Manlius statim missi sunt; quorum illi, utpote eloquentiori, datum est negotium ut loqueretur. Regi dixit se magnopere gaudere oculos ei tandem apertos esse eumque jam videre quanto melius esset pacem quam bellum cum Romanis habere; amicitiam Jugurthæ, cuius scelera tot tantaque essent, tali principe indignam esse; et societatem Romanorum quum honestam tum utilem fore. Bocchus, ut facti sui rationem redderet, dixit se a Romanis

semper staturum fuisse; sed eorum societatem sibi petenti denegatam esse.

1. *Homines fidei*—"Persons of trust, or trusty persons." But, Persons of great trust—*Homines magna fidelitatis*. So, A man of prudence—*Vir prudens* (*prudencia* would not do). But, A man of great prudence—*Vir magna prudentia*. 2. *Quorum illi*. The rel. forms a close connection between this and the preceding clause. 3. *Utpote eloquentiori*, or *utpote qui* (or *quippe qui*) *eloquentior esset*—LXXIX. 4. *Gaudeo*—§ 53, c. 5. *Societatem Romanorum*—XLII. 1. 6. *Rationem redderet*. This part cannot be accounted for—*Ratio hujus partis reddi non potest*. In dividing his property he left his youngest son out of account—*In suis dividendis nullam habuit rationem filii sui nati maximi*. They left his moral character entirely out of account—*Nullam omnino ejus morum rationem habuerunt*. I cannot account for their having fled—*Rationem reddere non possum cur fugerint*. He was accounted wise—*Sapiens habitus est*. See XLVI. and LXXIX.

## LXXXII.

Ericus, Daniæ rex, in carcere diu inclusus erat; et, quum in libertatem restitutus esset, magno cum dolore invenit multos homines turbulentos et seditiosos in regno esse; atque Erlandum, unum ex episcopis, muneribus sacris neglectis, non solum collegis suis negotium, quantum posset, facessere, verum etiam tentare populum in regem incitare. Quos motus quum ipse componere non posset, ad pontificem Romanum, Urbanum quartum, scripsit, ut is, publicæ pacis causâ, Erlandum vel removeret vel saltem aliter se in posterum gerere juberet. Urbanus, sine mora binas ad Erlandum literas scripsit, in quibus eum graviter objurgavit; prius tamen quam redditæ sunt, Urbanus mortuus erat, eique Clemens quartus successit; cui Erlandus ut gratularetur Romam ivit, sperans fore ut ejus gratiam sibi ita conciliaret atque Ericum ei in suspicionem adduceret.

1. *In carcere diu inclusus erat*. The notion of confinement or *keeping in*, rather than of *putting in*, is to be expressed; and therefore the abl. is used with *in*—LXXIX. 2. *Negotium facessere*. He put me to the trouble of coming—*Mihi laborem veniendi imposuit*. I was put to great trouble—*Mihi multum laboris impositum est*, or *mihi magnus labor impositus est*. The dream troubled him much—*Somnium eum magnopere sollicitaverat*. 3. *Quantum posset*; an indefinite expression, and therefore subj. 4. *Binas*—§ 6, b.

## LXXXIII.

Edvardus secundus, statim ut regnum adeptus est, Gaves-tonum, juvenem profligatum, qui paucis ante mensibus regno expulsus erat, revocavit. Hoc Anglis admodum displicuit, qui sciebant Edvardum ab hoc infami homine corruptum jam



esse, et patri suo iusjurandum dedisse se non passurum esse eum ad se rursus venire. Dixerunt eum qui iusjurandum violasset idoneum non esse qui rex esset, et eos qui se ei parituros esse promisissent auctoritati ejus jam resistere posse. Tantus Edvardi amor in Gavestonum fuit, ut historicus quidam dicat eum aliam nullam ob causam regem esse cupiisse nisi ut hunc scelestum ad honores proveheret.

1. *Ut regnum adeptus est*—On his accession to or ascending the throne. 2. *Rursus*—"Again, another time." *Iterum* would be simply "a second time." 3. *Admodum*, or *magnopere displicuit*. Cicero was highly eloquent—*Cicero admodum eloquens fuit*. He took it highly amiss—*Ægerimè tulit*. He was highly concerned about that—*De eâ re graviter commotus est*. It is high time that the war be ended—*Maturum est bellum confici*. The highest honours—*Amplissimi honores*. 4. *Nisi ut*—"Unless that"—§ 62.

#### LXXXIV.

In proelio Marathonio Athenienses tam citato gradu properaverunt, ut Persæ, qui nesciebant quæ iis causa properandi esset, insanos eos esse putarent, et non minus facilem quam certam victoriam sibi promitterent. Quam falsa eorum opinio fuerit, bene notum est. Persæ fusi fugatique sunt, et eorum castra, in quibus magnæ divitiæ fuerunt, capta et direpta sunt. Hæc prima fuit earum victoriarum quæ Persis ostenderunt quid virtute et scientia perfici posset. Athenienses reputarunt omnibus, sive obscuris sive illustribus, moriendum esse, sed non nisi paucos res magnas gerere posse. Ferunt militem, qui missus esset ut nuncium hujus victoriæ Athenas perferret, quum ad urbem pervenisset et exclamasset "Athenienses, cum victoribus gaudete," procubuisse animamque ex templo efflâsse.

1. *Causa*. This was my reason (or I had this reason) for saying so—*Hæc mihi fuit causa ita dicendi*. We have good (or great) reason to thank you for giving us such a book—*Magna nobis causa est cur tibi gratias agamus qui talem nobis librum dederis*. 2. *Properandi*. He hastened to the city—*Ad urbem properavit*. He hastened to set out—*Proficisci maturavit*. To hasten one's march—*Iter maturare*. He hastened his own death—*Mortem sibi maturavit*. *Properare*—"To hasten, do a thing with haste;" *Maturare*—"To hasten, make haste to get ready for." 3. *Reputarunt*. This reflected honour on him—*Hoc ei fuit honor*, or *Hoc ei honorem attulit*. 4. *Sive . . . Sive*—§ 7. 5. *Non nisi paucos* better than *paucos tantum*. I will try, only do not (provided you do not) interrupt me—*Tentabo, modo ne me interpellas*. 6. *Ferunt*. Eng. verbs of "supposing," "saying," "relating," are used either personally or impersonally; but the Lat. equivalents, *Credo, dico, fero, narro, &c.* are to be used personally: thus, It is said, supposed, related that he died then—*Is dicitur, creditur, fertur tum mortuus esse*. *Narro* and *fero* are occasionally found impersonal.

## LXXXV.

Cambyses, Persarum rex, quum Æthiopiam subigere constituisset, speculatores misit qui regionem explorarent. Rex Æthiopicus hos homines comprehensos sine injuria dimisit; deditque iis arcum quem jussit eos ad dominum suum ferre, eique dicere talem eum esse quali Æthiopes vulgo uterentur, et neminem qui eum facile flectere non posset, bellum Æthiopicis inferre debere. Quum rediissent legati, hæc mandata afferentes, Cambyses irâ tam incensus est ut, omnibus rebus domesticis neglectis, statim proficisci inciperet, quum nec consilium cepisset, nec commeatum ad iter comparasset. Haud longe progressus erat, quum pedem referre coactus est; et quum domum rediisset, fratrem suum, qui solus arcum Æthiopicum flectere potuit, interficiendum curavit.

1. *Persarum rex*; this is the form invariably used. So, Philip, king of Macedon—*Philippus, Macedonum rex*; but, Pyrrhus, king of Epir—*Pyrrhus, Epiri rex* always. This peculiarity is common to our own language also; thus "Mary, Queen of Scots," but, "James Sixth, king of Scotland." 2. *Constituisset*—LXXXVI. 3. *Ad dominum. Domino* (dat.) would mean "to his master, for his use or benefit." 4. *Bellum inferre* is more Ciceronian than *bellum facere*. 5. *Mandata* is thus always used in the plu. when it signifies "a message." 6. *Ira incensus*. Had the Eng. been "incensed" instead of "inflamed with anger," the Lat. would still be *ira incensus*, because *incensus* of itself means not "incensed" but "set on fire." 7. *Quum coactus est. Quum*—"At the time when" used with the indic.

## LXXXVI.

Si principum gloria ex ingenio prosperaque fortuna æstima est, pauci forsitan comparari possunt ei regi Castiliæ qui nomen Ferdinandi quintus gessit, cuique cognomen Catholico fuit. Ei Hispania magnitudinem suam magna ex parte debuit; et verum id esse videtur quod sæpe dictum est, si tamdiu vixisset ut omnia quæ in animo habuerit, perficeret, potestatem Hispaniæ etiam majorem futuram fuisse. Ferdinandus sine dubio victor vocari potest; sed qui eum inter illustrissimos hominum numerari volunt, videntur nullam omnino ejus morum rationem habuisse, oblique esse eum crudelem ac fraudulentum fuisse. Nonne dici potest, alios multos res ejus gestas æquare potuisse si putassent sibi licere repagula virtutis perfringere?

1. *Ingenio*. A man of abilities—*Vir præditus ingenio*. A man of great abilities—*Vir magno ingenio*. They were men of great abilities—*Homines magno ingenio fuerunt*. An able general—*Dux peritus*. They pleaded their own cause with ability—*Causam suam peritè egerunt*. I consider myself indebted to you for the ability to reply—*Tibi acceptum refero quod respondere possum*. 2. *Prosperus* and *secundus*—

"prosperous"—are applied to things; *Felix* to persons. 3. *Magna ex parte*. In some measure—*Quodammodo*. They vehemently opposed this measure—*Huic consilio vehementer adversati sunt*. 4. *Qui eum numerari volunt*, or *quibus eum numerari placet*. 5. *Morum*. Those who knew his character—*Qui ejus ingenium (mores) sciebant*, or *qui qualibus moribus esset sciebant*. His character may be gathered from what he did—*Qualibus is moribus fuerit, colligi ex his potest quæ fecit*. He bore a borrowed character—*Alienam personam gessit*. He assumed the character of a deliverer—*Liberatoris personam assumpsit*. He long preserved a character for integrity—*Diu famam integritatis habuit*. Eli enjoyed a high character among the Jews—*Eli in magna apud Judæos existimatione fuit*. They think well of his general character—*In plerisque rebus bene de ejus moribus existimant*. Their character for integrity does not stand high—*Non magnam integritatis laudem habent*. *Laus*, as well as signifying "praise," signifies "that which entitles one to praise," as, He had a great character for bravery—*Laude fortitudinis enituit*. An illustrious character—*Vir illustris* (*vir* may be either expressed or understood). A worthless character, a public character—*Homo improbus, vir publicus*. Livy's character of Appius—*Livii judicium de Appio*. It was written in Greek characters—*Literis Græcis scriptum est*.

## LXXXVII.

Vulsinienses, qui omnium Etruscorum vetustissimi potentissimique fuerunt, urbe suâ muris validis munitâ contractisque omnibus copiis quas comparare poterant, Romanis diu restiterunt, qui, eorum magnitudini invidentes, summâ ope nisi sunt ut eos libertate privarent. Eos, postquam subacti (sunt) et Romanis stipendiarii facti sunt, mutatâ conditionis suæ adeo puduit, ut eos vitæ tædere inciperet, et, nolentes auctoritatem exercere quam jam aliorum arbitrio tenerent, servis suis manumissis totius civitatis administrationem traderent. Facile credi potest, servos, jam senatores et magistratus factos, potestate suâ abusos esse et severissime imperitasse. Tam crudeles quidem fuerunt ut cito Romani sese interponere cogerentur.

1. *Comparare*. The same verb is used with reference to provisions in LXXXV. 2. *Summâ ope nisi sunt ut*, or *summam operam dederunt ut*—They used every exertion, or their utmost exertions or endeavours. By my own exertions—*Meo Marte* (a poetic phrase). 3. *Puduit*. I am ashamed of myself—*Pudet me mei*. He was now ashamed—*Pudore jam suffusus est*; *pudet* will not do in this sentence, as the thing whereof "he was ashamed" is not specified. 4. *Inciperet* is an ancillary verb. 5. *Arbitrio*—LXXI. 6. *Tenerent*—subj., being the sentiment of the Vulsinienses, not of the historian.

## LXXXVIII.

Darius Nothus, paucis ante mortem diebus, dixit se cupere filios suos videre, qui animi ambitiosi fuerunt, nec more fra-

trum inter se egerant. Quum eò ubi jacebat venissent, significavit causam sibi eos convocandi esse ut eos ad fraternum amorem cohortaretur, certioresque faceret quomodo regnum dividi vellet. Tum ad Artaxerxem, filium natu maximum, conversus, dixit regnum jure ejus esse, nec sibi esse in animo eum illo fraudare; sed esse certas partes, quibus faciliè carere posset, quæ fratribus ejus relinquendæ essent; nominatim, Lydiam atque Ioniam Cyro esse danda, qui tamen nomen regis habiturus non esset. Discesserunt filii promittentes se patris sui imperiis obtemperaturos esse; sed simul ac mortuus ille est, Cyrus, vel instigatus a matre sua, quæ Artaxerxis uxorem odio habebat, vel sola dominationis cupiditate impulsus, bellum Artaxerxi intulit.

1. *Dixit se cupere.* He expresses a doubt whether—*Dixit se dubitare an.* He expressed himself in a few words—*Faucis verbis locutus est.* He expressed surprise at seeing me—*Dixit se mirari quod me videret* (indirect). He expressed his conviction, approbation, himself satisfied = He said that he was convinced, that he approved, that he was satisfied. The prophecies are expressed accurately and precisely—*Vaticinia accuratè et definitè exprimuntur.* They expressed their joy by celebrating games—*Lætitiam celebrandis ludis testati sunt.* To express his gratitude, he begged of me to accept of a large sum of money—*Ut gratum animum significaret, a me petivit ut grandem pecuniam acciperem.* 2. *More, or ritu fratrum, or ut fratres.* He fought like a lion—*More leonis* (or *ut leo*) *pugnavit.* *More, ritu, ut* signify "like, after the manner of." *Similis*—"Like" in appearance or disposition. *Instar*—"Like" in size, "as large or formidable as." He was like a king—*Similis regi fuit.* The ship was like a city—*Navis fuit instar urbis.* The river was like a sea—*Flumen instar maris fuit.* "Like"="such as" is made by *qualis*, as, How can a Dutchman, like you, speak Latin?—*Quomodo Batavus, qualis tu es, Latine loqui potest?* Silly, like him—*Ineptus, qualis ille fuit.* 3. *Eò ubi.* Although "where" alone is necessary in Eng., the Lat. requires eò because of the verb of motion, *venissent.* 4. *Causam sibi eos convocandi esse, or causam cur eos convocasset esse, or hæc de causâ eos convocasse ut, &c.*

## LXXXIX.

Dardano, quum sexaginta quatuor annos in Phrygia regnasset, successit filius suus Erichthonius, qui, patris sui vestigiis insistens, a populo suo amatus atque a principibus vicinis in honore habitus est. Apollodorus dicit Erichthonio fuisse fratrem natu majorem, qui ante patrem suum sit mortuus, et sororem, quæ Phineo, Thracum regi, nupta sit. Quum nomen Erichthonii Græcum sit, nonnulli inde collegerunt linguam Græcam inter Phryges a primis temporibus fuisse notam; quod argumentum haud exiguum pondus haberet, si probari posset hoc nomen Phrygium fuisse, non Græcam ejus inter-

pretationem; bene enim notum est et Græcos et Ægyptios omnia nomina peregrina in linguam suam vertere solitos esse. Quum Athenis fuerit rex nomine Erichthonius, nonnulli existimarunt Trojanos Atheniensibus ortos fuisse; sed hæc opinio tam absurda est ut vix digna sit quæ refutetur.

1. *In honore habitus est.* To pay respect to one—*Honorem alicui habere.* There were few poets who were more respected—*Pauci fuerunt poetæ qui magis colerentur.* 2. *Natu majorem.* Senior—"older" is used when both the persons spoken of are actually "old;" e.g., if one were 90 years old, and the other 80, the former would be *senior*. But when the persons spoken of are not "old," or when there is no reference to *greatness of age*, *natu major* is used. So, *Junior* when the persons are "young," and *minor natu* without respect to "youth." 3. *Primis.* Early in the spring—*Ineunte vere.* 4. *Quod argumentum*—XXV. 5. *Pondus* is used both literally and metaphorically as here. A weight of gold—*Pondus auri.* He has no weight with me—*Nihil ponderis apud me habet.* 6. *Probari.* He proved the truth of what he taught—*Probavit vera esse ea quæ docebat.* He proved of great service to me—*Mihi magno usui fuit.* To prove victorious, delusive—*Esse victor, fallax.* 7. *Non Græcam, &c.* "And not" cannot always be made by *et non* or *neque*. As here "and" must sometimes be omitted in order to make an emphatic opposition.

### XC.

Antiqui poetæ fingunt, tempore Cecropis, post Athenas conditas, oleam subito in alia parte urbis apparuisse, et equum eodem tempore in alia ex terra erupisse. Cecropi, Apollinem consulenti, responsum est, Minervam et Neptunum inter se certare uter nomen novæ urbi daret; oleamque ab illa missam esse, ab hoc autem equum. Cecrops igitur incolas omnes convocatos interrogavit utri horum numinum urbem dedicandam esse putarent. Mares omnes censuerunt, Neptuno, quippe qui id quod generi humano utilius esset produxisset, honorem eum deberi. Omnes foeminæ contra contenderunt Minervam, quæ id quod pacis signum esset, dedisset, dignam esse quæ præferretur. Vicerunt foeminæ, atque urbs a Minerva appellata est, cujus nomen Græcè est Athena.

1. *Et equum.* *Et* here couples two events happening together. Observe the use of "and" below where it is made by *autem*—*ab hoc autem*, and compare VIII. and XVII.; *autem* may in sentences like this be omitted, but it is better expressed. 2. *Erupisse.* *Erumpo* is intransitive, but *rumpo* transitive. The pipe burst and the water burst out—*Fistula rupta est, et aqua erupit.* 3. *Censuerunt.* *Censeo*—"I give it as my opinion," "I make a motion (in order that)," is very often followed by *ut*, also by the part. in *dus*, as, Cato gave it as his opinion that Carthage ought to be destroyed—*Cato censebat Carthaginem esse delendam.* 4. *Eum honorem.* *Eum* is required to

define honorem—"that honour"—the honour formerly spoken of.  
 5. *Contra*. On the one hand . . . on the other—*Hinc . . . illinc*.  
 6. *Contenderunt*—XXIII. 7. *Pæferretur*. Augustus adopted Tiberius in preference to Germanicus—*Augustus Tiberium adoptavit, Germanico posthabito, præterito, or omisso*.

## XCI.

Fabulæ multæ, quibus nemo nunc credit, de Gallorum antiquorum origine et vagationibus narratæ sunt, sed, ut has omittam, certum est eos Romanis tempore Tarquinii Prisci primum notos fuisse, et circiter ducentis post annis, quum in Italiam ingenti cum exercitu venissent, Romam captam solo æquasse. Tam propensi ad bellum et tam formidolosi fuerunt, ut Romani ipsi confiterentur nullam toto terrarum orbem gentem esse quam plus timerent, sacerdotibus ipsis arma sumere coactis, quum bellum Gallicum exortum esset. Strabo narrat Gallos quosdam, qui ad Alexandrum venissent, interrogatos numquid esset quod eos terreret, respondisse nihil esse quod tam timerent quam ne cælum rueret. Ferociiores tamen quam perseverantiores fuerunt, et scriptores Romani dicunt nunquam futurum fuisse ut populares sui ab iis vincerentur, si scivissent quam inconstantes essent, et primo iis strenuè restitissent.

1. *Tempore Tarquinii*—§ 1. 2. *Notos*. They are known to me—*Mihi notî sunt*. But, They are known to be fools—*Notum est eos stultos esse*. 3. *Circiter*—LXV. 4. *Toto terrarum orbe* without the prep. *in*. He was not found in the city—*In urbe non inventus est*. But, He was not found in the whole city—*Totâ urbe non inventus est, i.e.*, He was not found in any part of it; *in totâ urbe non inventus est* would mean—He was not found in the whole (in every part of the) city. 5. *Numquid*—XIX. under *num*. 6. *Quam ne*—"As (they feared) lest." 7. *Perseverantiores*—XIII. and LV. 8. *Populares*—XXXVII.

## XCII.

Qui in Comitiiis Romanis suaserunt ut tertium bellum Punicum susciperetur, dixerunt Carthaginienses contra recens foedus magnum numerum navium bellicarum instruxisse; societate quam Massinissa cum Romanis fecisset non deterritos, terminos suos, ut eum impugnarent, transgressos esse; et uni ex ejus filiis omnibusque legatis Romanis insultasse. Fieri potest ut hæc omnia quodammodo vera fuerint; sed certe Carthaginienses sese contra Massinissam non prius armarunt, quam jus iis a Romanis denegatum est. Hi, qui se arbitros esse professi erant, æqui esse debuerunt; cur igitur Carthaginiensium querelas non audierunt? et cur Numi-

darum regi semper faverunt? Scimus legatos Romanos, per speciem controversias omnes dirimendi missos, de industria nihil fecisse, ne Massinissa quominus consilia sua absolveret prohiberetur.

1. *Comitia*—An assembly of the whole Roman people to give their vote upon anything. The sing. *comitium* was the part of the forum where they met. 2. *Contra foedus*. Contrary to expectation—*Contra* (or *præter*) *spem*. He acted contrary to what he was commanded—*Contra fecit atque jussus est*. He advised the king to the contrary of what the other had proposed—*Regi alia omnia suavit atque alter proposuerat*. 3. *Terminos*—"Limits, boundaries, borders, or line of separation." *Amānus* forms the boundary between Syria and Cilicia—*Amānus est terminus inter Syriam et Ciliciam*. He marched to the eastern borders of Cilicia—*Ad eos Ciliciæ fines profectus est*. 4. *Insultasse*. He insulted me—*Mihi* (or *in me*) *insultavit*. He insulted over their calamity—*Eorum calamitati insultavit*. I have been insulted—*Mihi insultatum est*. Insultingly—*Insultans* (part.) To put up with insults—*Contumelias pati*. 5. *Sese armarunt*, armo being transitive. 6. *Jus*—"Justice, what is just;" *justitia*—"justice, or upright dealing." 7. *Arbiter*—"an arbitrator"—means also "a witness, one that knows or sees a thing done, an eye-witness;" and in the latter sense it differs from *testis*, which means "a witness, one that gives evidence." Before he did this, he removed all witnesses—*Præquam hoc fecit, omnes arbitros removit*.

### XCIII.

Hamilcaris victoriæ in Hispania, et Hasdrubalis, qui ei successit, res gestæ ardenti juvenis Hannibalis menti cupiditatem patris sui gloriam æquandi ejusque consilia persequendi injeecerunt. Incitatus est Hannibal implacabili illo erga Romam odio quod commune ei cum totâ factione Barcinâ fuit; et huc accedebat quod patri suo jusjurandum dederat, se, quidquid evenisset, nunquam in amicitia cum Romanis fore, sed e contrario, omnia quæ posset, ut eos frangeret, facturum esse. Quæcunque alia promissorum contemptio Hannibali obijci potest, (et scriptores Romani sive merito sive non, eum accusant quod fidem violaverit,) certum est neminem hoc jusjurandum fidelius servare potuisse.

1. *Commune*. I have this in common with you—*Hoc commune est mihi tecum*. Man has many things in common with beasts—*Homo multa habet communia cum bestiis*. 2. *Hoc accedebat*. To that, to which was added, or, in addition to that, to which—*Ed, quod accedebat*. In addition to his other advantages, he had prudent friends, or, to his other advantages was added that he had prudent friends—*Ad cætera ejus commoda accessit quod habebat* (or *ut haberet*) *prudentes amicos*. This added greatly to their number—*Hoc eorum numerum magnopere auxit*. 3. *Omnia quæ posset*—All that was in his power, all that he was able to do. He put it in their power to return—*Is fecit potestatem redeundi*. 4. *Obijci*. He was objected to as being too old—*Et obiectum est quod ætate nimis proventus esset*.

They objected to him that he had been seen in the enemy's camp—*Et objecerunt quod in hostium castris visus esset*. They objected to his being a helot—*Objecerunt quod helotes esset*. They objected that he was a helot, and therefore refused his services—*Objecerunt eum heloten esse, ideoque ejus operam rejecerunt*. I do not object that you looked into books—*Non objicio te in libros inspexisse*. I do not object (or I make no objection) to your coming—*Non recuso quominus venias*. I have no objection to being sent—*Non recuso quin militar*. Such objections have no weight—*Quæ ita objiciuntur, nihil ponderis habent*. Many objections were made against him—*Multa ei objecta sunt*. I will reply to all your objections—*Ad omnia quæ objecisti respondēbo*.

## XCIV.

Anno Romæ ducentesimo nonagesimo secundo, dissensiones magnæ in urbe fuerunt. Consules dixerunt tribunos plebis agere quasi omnia mutari vellent; et tribuni consules accusarunt quod potestate quam a populo acceperant abuterentur, et libertatem civitatis evertere conarentur. Inter hos tumultus venerunt Romam Hernici nuncium afferentes Æquos et Voscōs, anni proximi cladibus non deterritos, copias ad aliud bellum colligere, infidamque Antiatiū coloniam sese iis juncturam esse. Tribuni dixerunt se persuasum habere hanc meram esse fabulam, a patriciis excogitatam, Hernicosque pretio corruptos esse ut eam vulgarent.

1. *Libertatem* is not used in the plu., nor is the plu. needed, "liberty" and "liberties" being one and the same thing. With *libertas* we may compare *spes*, which being deficient in the gen., dat., and abl. plu., when these cases may appear to be required the corresponding sing. ones are used, as, He was disappointed in his *hopes*, or *expectations*—*Spe falsus est*. Having given up all *hopes* of taking the city, he raised the siege—*Spe omni urbis capiendæ abjectâ (or depositâ), obsidionem solvit*. I entertain many *hopes*—*Multas spes habeo*. *Crudelitas* is another word that wants the plu.; but as a plu. is necessary in this case, it is supplied by the neuter plu. of the adj. *Crudelis*, as, Many cruelties were committed—*Multa crudelia facta sunt*. 2. *Proximus*—LXIX. *Ultimus* will not do here, for it means "last" when anything of the same kind never follows; thus, *Ultimi anni* would mean that it was the "last (final) year," that another did not follow, neither was expected to follow; while *proximi* means the "last, the one next or immediately before." *Codrus* was the last king of Athens—*Ultimus rex Athenarum fuit Codrus*. Compare in XLIX. The last (*ultimus*) Macedonian king that bore that name—no Macedonian king ever bore it after him. 3. *Juncturam esse*. The pass. of *jungo* with "they" for the subject would be absurd, meaning "that they would be put together by the Antiates." 4. *Dixerunt se persuasum habere*—LXXXVIII. I did this from a conviction that it was just—*Hoc feci, persuasum habens justum esse*. He had been raised to this dignity from a conviction on the part of the people that he would consult the public interest—*Ad hanc dignitatem provectus erat, quod (because) populus persuasum habebat eum utilitati publicæ consulturum esse*. They were soon convinced of their mistake—



*Cito persuasum habuerunt se errasse. I am fully convinced—Persuasissimum habeo.*

## XCV.

Quidam, audiente Agesilao, nobili illo Lacedæmoniorum rege, dixit, hominum omnium utilissimos esse rhetores, iisque multo plus indulgeri debere quam vulgo iis indulgeretur; atque inter oratores omnes, qui sibi noti essent, hos autem non paucos esse, longe optimum esse Sophisten Atticum, cui nunquam nec verba nec argumenta deessent, quique vi eloquentiæ suæ efficere posset ut res levissimæ viderentur magnæ. Agesilaus solito civium suorum more respondit, "Mi amice," inquit, "ego qui veritatem revereri didici te non possum cum assensu audire. Num expectas ut sutorem admirer, qui in parvum pedem magnum induceret calceum."

1. *Rhetores esse, iisque indulgeri*—§ 66. 2. *Indulgeretur* must be expressed, although the sign "were" is sufficient in Eng. The auxiliaries "do" and "have" are similarly used. He speaks more than I do—*Is plura loquitur quam ego loquor*. He has read more books than I have—*Is plures legit libros quam ego legi*; *quam ego habeo* would mean "than I have in my possession." 3. *Noti*. I had the honour of his acquaintance—*Mihi contigit ut eum noscerem*. 4. *Nunquam nec... nec*—§ 64. 5. *Efficere ut*. I will make you repent of your rashness—*Faciam ut te temeritatis poeniteat*. 6. *Cum assensu*. This met with the approbation of the senate—*Hoc senatus probatum est*. He expressed his entire approbation of my plans—*Dixit se mea consilia omnino probare*. 7. *Qui induceret*—"Who should put," a supposed case, and therefore the subj.; *Sutorem qui induxit* would mean "the shoemaker who did (actually) put."

## XCVI.

Tres diversissimæ animi dotes tribus historicis Græcis, Herodoto, Thucydidi, et Xenophonti attributæ sunt. Plutarchus primus ostendit Herodotum videri existimasse, summum numen, quasi hominibus invidens, iis aliquamdiu successum dare, quo calamitosius sit eorum fatum. Dixerunt alii Thucydidem ex contrario, negantem deum ullum in rebus humanis se interponere, facere eorum fortunam quorum historiam tradat, ex ipsorum prudentia aut stultitia pendere; et Xenophontem, utrique dissimilem, omnia ad deorum benignitatem aut iram referre.

1. *Dotes*—"qualities, endowments." He was possessed of many qualities that reflect honour on a prince—*Multis dotibus quæ principi sunt honori præditus fuit*. Good qualities—*Virtutes*. Bad qualities—*Vitia*. He was sent in the quality of proconsul—*Missus est proconsul*, or *ut proconsul*. 2. *Quasi, like etsi, nisi, utpote, &c.* may be

used either with a part., adj., or a finite mood, *aspo* however taking *qui* with the finite mood. 3. *Quid=ut ed*—That their fate may be by that much more calamitous, in proportion as they have enjoyed success. 4. *Facere*. Livy represents the tribunes as saying—*Livius facit tribunos dicere*. *Nepos* represents Hannibal as having died in this year—*Nepos dicit* (not *facit*) *Hannibalem hoc anno mortuum esse*. Venus is represented by the poets as having risen from the sea—*Venus a poetis dicitur e mari surrexisse*. Asia was represented under the figure of a woman—*Efficta est Asia sub imaginem mulieris*. 5. *Pendere*. He depended on hope—*Spe nixus est*. The safety of the whole state depended on a great chance—*Totius civitatis salus magno casu constituit*. They depended on the protection of the army—*Præsidio exercitus confisi sunt*. The victory depended on which of the two armies should first come into the field—*Victoria in eo versa est uter exercituum in aciem prior veniret*. Happiness does not depend on wealth—*Felicitas non in divitiis posita est*. 6. *Referre*. These predictions cannot be referred to any other events—*Hæc prædicta non possunt ad alia ulla eventa referri*. These words refer to Pompey—*Hæc verba ad Pompeium referuntur*. These things are all to be referred to the same class—*Hæc omnia eodem sunt referenda*. It is uncertain what is the reference in these words—*Incertum est quid hæc verba sunt referenda*. His prophecies referred to the sins of the Jews—*Ejus vaticinia ad Judæorum peccata respiciebant*. He referred to me in these words—*Ad me his verbis respexit*. Part of his speech had reference to himself—*Ejus orationis pars ad ipsum pertinebat*.

## XCVII.

Rex quidam, rebus domi turbatis, (in)rus recessit, ubi familiaritatem contraxit cum Conone rustico, apud quem rapis vesci sæpe gavisus est. Quum rex postea in regnum suum restitutus esset, Conon, uxoris suæ precibus victus, unum e maximis rapis quæ inveniri potuerunt, ad eum attulit. Rex donum benigne accepit magnamque ei pecuniam pro eo numerari jussit. Quo viso, purpuratus, spe præmii majoris, regem equo donavit. Rex, tamen, quum sciret suâ in Cononem liberalitate eum ad hoc incitatum esse, eum remuneratus est rapo, quod majore pretio quam vulgo pro equis solvatur sibi constituisse dixit.

1. *Precibus victus*—"Overcome, or prevailed on by entreaties." In this country various ceremonies prevailed—*In hac regione variae ceremoniae valebant*. A report prevails—*Fama tenet*. *Vincere* is "to prevail, gain, or get the better of;" *valere*, "to prevail, be prevalent, not uncommon." This opinion prevailed—*Hæc sententia valuit*, if it means that the opinion was common; but *Hæc sententia vicit*, if it means that, out of two or more opinions, this one got the better of the others. There are various other verbs signifying "to prevail," as, *Persuadeo*—"I prevail on (by argument or threatening);" *Exoro*—"I prevail on (by entreaty);" *Impetro*—"I prevail or obtain (by asking)." 2. *Spe*. He remained long there in expectation of my coming—*Diu ibi mansit expectans ut ego venirem*. 3. *Constituisse*. This cost me no-

thing—*Hoc mihi nihili constitit*. This cost him his life—*Hoc ei morte stetit*, the Lat. idiom being "this cost him his death."

### XCVIII.

Baleares duas insulas quæ recentibus temporibus Majorca et Minorca appellatæ sunt, incoluerunt. Ex iis quæ Diodorus aliique de iis narrant, simplicissimum genus hominum fuisse videntur. Iis cavernæ sub rupibus pro domibus fuerunt. Omnia quibus indigebant domi inventa sunt, vino excepto, cujus avidissimi fuisse dicuntur. Usus pecuniæ omnino prohibitus est, timebant enim ne sibi invideretur, si in vectæ divitiæ essent. Audiverant Geryonem ditissimum fuisse, atque ob hanc causam ab Hercule oppugnatum et interfectum esse; et dixerunt se, hoc exemplo doctos, pauperes manere velle.

1. *Iis cavernæ pro domibus fuerunt*. This served to embarrass them—*Hoc ad eos turbandos pertinebat*. His vices served my design—*Ejus vitia meum consilium adjuverunt*. 2. *Excepto*. All, with the exception of two, were slain—*Omnes, duobus exceptis, interfecti sunt*. All, without exception, know this—*Omnes ad unum hoc sciunt*. With the sole exception of Cicero—*Cicerone uno excepto*. 3. *Invectæ essent*, not inveherentur. 4. *Fuisse*—pluèff.; *Velle*—imperf. 5. *Pauperes*. There is the same distinction between *pauper* and *egenus* as between *paupertas* and *egestas*—LV.

### XCIX.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo quadragesimo sexto, quum Jacobus noster secundus tot annos haberet ut ei potestas regia committeretur, Comes Duglassiæ, quum invidiam quæ excitata in eum erat sustinere nequiret, statuit, si fieri posset, sibi conciliare regem, cui bene sciebat se magnopere displicuisse. Quum ergo Sterlinum, ubi rex erat, ivisset, admisusque ad eum esset, dixit haud exiguam partem eorum quæ contra se affirmarentur, omnino falsam esse; se multa quidem quæ nullam excusationem haberent quorumque se jam puderet fecisse; sique in gratiam acceptus esset, se hoc nulli merito suo, sed tantum regis clementiæ attributurum esse. Rex, hæc oratione auditâ, dixit se præterita libenter condonare, sperantem omnia in posterum meliora fore; sed incertum est utrum orationi ipsi an aliorum commendationi Duglassius salutem suam debuerit.

1. *Tot annos haberet ut*—lit. "had so many years that," "was so old that," "was old enough to."—See LI. 2. *Regius*—"Royal, of or belonging to a king." *Regalis*—"Suitable to, befitting or becoming a king." *Regia vestis*—The royal robe, the robe of the king. *Regalis vestis*—A royal robe, a robe befitting a king, or such as a king wears. The

Eng. use of "royal" is sometimes such, that it cannot be made by either of these words, as, The royal prophet (meaning that the same person was both a king and a prophet)—*Rex vates*. *Regius vates* would mean "the prophet belonging to the king." The royal priestess—*Regina sacerdos*. Compare LVIII. 3. *Nequiret* is equivalent to *non posset*, and is used here to prevent the too close repetition of the latter verb in the same tense, *si fieri posset* being the following clause. 4. *Si fieri posset*—"If it could be done," but he was uncertain whether it could or not; therefore, subj. 5. *Ad eum admissus*—Being admitted into his presence, to him. He forbade them to come into his presence (i.e. sight)—*Eos vetuit in conspectum venire*. The prep. *coram*—"in presence of" cannot be used with verbs of motion. He was standing in presence of the king—*Coram rege stabat*. The miracle was performed in presence of a great multitude of persons—*Miraculum factum est coram magna multitudine hominum*; *coram multitudine* implies that the multitude saw the miracle performed, that it was done before their eyes, that they all saw it; *multitudine præsente* would not imply that they all saw it; they might be present without seeing it. 6. *Afirmarentur*—Were (then) alleged; *afirmata essent*—Had been (formerly) alleged. 7. *Excusationem habent*. *Excusatione uti*—To make an apology. He requested him to make no further apology—*Eum rogavit ut nullâ excusatione amplius uteretur*, or *Ne se amplius excusaret*, or *Ut faceret finem sese excusandi*, or *Ne quid ultra diceret sui purgandi causâ*. To allege bad health as an excuse—*Adversam valetudinem causari*, or *excusare*. 8. *Acceptus esset*; compare *Deminutus esset* in III.

## C.

Anno Romæ quadringentesimo quinquagesimo octavo vel paucis ante annis in expeditione quam Romani contra Corsicam insulam susceperant, fracti sunt navium eorum mali, implicati arboribus quæ in oris insulæ crescebant. Putes damnum eo tempore acceptum et expeditionem ipsam, quæ prima a Romanis in eam insulam facta est, digna fuisse quæ ab historicis Romanis commemorarentur. Attamen, ut alios omittam, certum est Livium nullam de hac re mentionem facere, scimus enim futurum fuisse ut, si ab eo narrata esset, in prima ejus Decade inveniretur, quam operis ejus partem integram habemus. Varii critici, quibus mirum visum est Livium de re tam notabili omnino silere, quæsierunt quæ ei causa eam omit-tendi esse potuerit.

1. *Fracti sunt*—LXXIV., under *rumpo*. 2. *Putes*—"You would or may think," pres. in relation to *fuisse*, perf.—§ 28, c. 3. *Attamen*—"Yet, but yet, however." *Tamen* cannot stand first in its clause, unless when the preceding clause contains a word signifying "although;" accordingly, when such cases as the present occur, where it is not convenient to remove it from the first place, the compound *attamen* is substituted, *tamen* being in effect thus placed second. Though he is just, yet he is merciful—*Etsi justus est, tamen est misericors*. "Yet" = "up to this time" is *adhuc*, as, He is yet alive—*Adhuc vivit*. 4. *Futurum fuisse ut inveniretur*—§ 42, f. 5. *Quam partem*—XXV. 6. *Silere*—Should be silent, or, is silent.

## CI.

Quum Basilius Muscovita cum Constantio, duce Polono, proelio configere paratus esset, didicit novas copias auxilio adversario suo venire, et monstratum ei est quam utile futurum esset si nulli earum parti permissum esset ut exercitui sese jungeret. Muscovita tamen noluit quidquam facere quod timorem indicaret, sed superbe "Nos," inquit, "qui vires nostras novimus et fortissimis pares sumus, gaudere debemus alios stultos venire qui cum cæteris pereant. Nonne manifestum est quo plures in aciem contra nos prodeant, eo gloriosiore victoriam nostram fore?" Vana hæc jactatio fuit. Muscovitæ, hostem despicientes cui se facile obstare posse existimabant, pugnarunt quasi somno capti essent, et, Polonorum perseverantia victi, se tandem fugæ mandarunt, castra sua hosti diripienda relinquentes.

1. *Permissum esset*; compare with *Deminutus esset* in III. 2. *Indicaret* is Potential—"Which might betoken." *Indicavit* would give a different meaning:—thus, "He would not do anything, and this (*quod*—which) betokened." 3. *Novimus*—"Know, are acquainted with." *Scio* denotes "simple knowledge of;" *Nosco*, a "fuller knowledge," an "acquaintance with." *Scio hominem*—I know the man (as by sight). *Novi hominem*—I am acquainted with the man. *Novimus* is therefore the proper word here. 4. *Pares*. We are more than a match for them—*Plusquam pares iis sumus*. 5. *Prodeant*—potential, "That may take the field." 6. *Quasi*—§ 39. 7. *Diripienda relinquentes*. *Relinquo, dedo, suscipio, curo, censeo, &c.*, are followed by the part. in *dus*. They gave up the camp to be pillaged—*Castra diripienda dederunt*. He undertook the pillaging of the camp—*Castra diripienda suscepit*. He caused the camp to be pillaged—*Castra diripienda curavit*. He was of opinion that the camp should be pillaged—*Censebat castra esse diripienda*.

## CII.

Fanum Sancti Joannis Angeriaci a Duce Andegaviæ obsideri coeptum est, III. Id. Octobr., anno millesimo quingentesimo sexagesimo nono. Incolis quos nullæ minæ movere potuissent, postquam se per duos menses fortiter defenderunt, persuasum est ut in deditionem venirent, promissio dato eos nullam injuriam accepturos esse. Rex fîs dixerat, si portas suas in diem certum aperuissent, et se in proximos quatuor menses arma non gesturos esse promisissent, iis permissum iri ut cum omnibus bonis suis inviolati discederent, et aliquando fortasse fieri posse ut iis urbs sua restitueretur. Ut hæc obsidio defensorum virtute fuit insignis, ita quoque insignis fuit perfidia quæ secuta est. Simul ac portæ apertæ sunt, incolæ miseri omnibus, quæ secum por-

tabant, spoliati sunt; et novus exercitus qui venit ab oppido quod quatuor millia passuum distabat, multos ex iis occidit aliosque in flumen coniecit. Utrum rex hoc fieri jusserit, an in milites solos infamia cadere debeat, haud omnino certum est.

1. *Fanum* is always used in thus expressing the name of a place called after a saint. St Nicholas—*Fanum Sancti Nicholæ*; St James's—*Fanum Sancti Jacobi*. 2. *Coepit* est—*Coepit*—§ 46. He commenced the war—*Bellum inchoatum*. The war commenced—*Bellum inchoatum est*. He commenced hostilities against me—*Bellum contra me movit*. 3. *Per duos menses*—For, during two months, the whole of two months. Compare in the next sentence in *proximos quatuor menses*—For the next four months, i.e., they were not to bear arms at any time within four months; *per* would imply that they were not to bear arms during the whole of the next four months, although perhaps they might not be prevented from bearing them during some part of the time. 4. *In certum diem*—By or against a certain fixed day. 5. *Aliquando*—"one day, sometime or other"—has here a future reference; for its use with reference to the past, see II. and XXII. 6. *Ut iis urbs sua restitueretur*—That to them their city would be restored, or that they would have their city restored to them. Compare *ut Angli revocarentur* in LXXIX. If the pronoun for "their" preceded that for "them" here, "their" would be made by *eorum*, thus, *ut eorum urbs iis restitueretur*. If in the latter arrangement *sua* were used, it would mean "his (the king's) city." When "their" comes first, it appears to be rendered with reference to the speaker, who is here the king, and is therefore *eorum*; but when "their" follows "them," its relation to the "king" is lost sight of, and it is made with reference solely to "them," therefore *sua*. *Ut haberent urbem suam restitutam*—That they might have (hold possession of) their city restored (after being restored). 7. *Distabat*—Was off, distant. A naval engagement took place off Artemisium—*Proelium navale ad Artemisium factum est*. 8. *In milites solos*—On the soldiers alone, exclusively. The Romans gave the name of Asia to that part exclusively which was afterwards called Asia Minor—*Romani nomen Asiæ non nisi ei parti dederunt quæ postea Asia Minor vocata est*.

### CIII.

Apud Ægyptios fuerunt duo in anno festa, in quibus suæ victimæ solæ fuerunt, quæ consuetudo impedivit quominus nimium multi evaderent. Hominibus eo tempore permissum est ut horum animalium carnem ederent, dummodo ne post plenilunium eam tangerent, quum sacrificium extra templa et non sacerdotum ordinariorum manibus factum est. Herodoto ignosci debet dicenti Ægyptios suibus ad terram arandam et occandam usos esse. Hic error eo minus mirabilis videbitur, si reputes sues post Nili inundationem in agros esse immixtos, qui devorarent plantarum aquatiliū radices et omnia quæ sacra Ibis consumere non potuit brevi eo tempore quod inter fluminis recessum laborisque initium intercessit.

1. *Apud*—XXII. 2. *In anno*—"In the year, i.e., in every year;" *anno* without *in* would mean "in a year"—"some year or other" not specified. 3. *Victimæ*—"Victims, animals sacrificed." He fell a victim to intemperance—*Petiit intemperantiâ*. 4. *Evaderent*—XLVI., 9. 5. *Hominibus*—People, persons, men. *Populus*—The people, the body of the people. The Roman people—*Populus Romanus*. People think so—*Homines ita putant*. People relate—*Ferunt*, i.e., they (people in general) relate. The Jews were not the people to do so—*Judæi non fuerunt qui ita facerent*. The Jews were not a people to do so—*Judæi* is *populus non fuerunt qui ita facerent*, "people" in this sentence being equivalent to "nation, or body of people." 6. *Dummodo ne*—conj.—"Provided not." Provided they did touch—*Dummodo* (or simply *dum*) *tangerent*. 7. *Ignosci*. His sins were pardoned—*Peccata ei remissa sunt*. He pardoned him his sins—*Ei peccata condonavit*. He pardoned what was past—*Præterita condonavit*. To pardon sin—*Peccato ignoscere*. 8. *Brevi eo tempore quod interessit*—"In the or that short time which intervened;" without *eo*, the meaning will be "in a short time, and it (which) intervened."

## CIV.

Post bellum Macedonicum, legati Romam ex Syria, Ægypto, Rhodo, Numidia, Pergamo et Bithynia venerunt; alii, ut sese Romanis excusarent; alii, ut eorum amicitiam peterent; alli autem, ut iis gratularentur. Syriis responsum est, eorum regem, qui jussa senatus Romani executus esset, id fecisse quod reipublicæ gratum ipsique utile esset. Ægyptiis fides data est, Romam iis amicam manere eosque contra impetus omnes defensuram esse. Rhodii asperrimè tractati sunt; et, si Cato non fuisset, pro hostibus habiti essent. Numidis, Pergamenis, et Bithynis, gratiæ ob navatam civitati operam actæ sunt, et cum donis pretiosis sunt dimissi. Eumenes, Syriaci regis frater, etiam statuerat iter in Italiam suscipere, ut se in gratiam apud Romanos restitueret; sed senatus, quum nesciret quomodo eum exciperet, decretum fecit, ne reges, nisi arcessiti, Romam venirent.

1. *Syriis responsum est*—The answer made to the Syrians was, or the Syrians received for answer. 2. *Qui executus esset*—In executing, or in as much as he executed. Qui assigning a reason takes the subj.—§ 50. 3. *Gratum*—I. 4. *Fides data est*—XXII. 5. *Operam*. I offer you these services—*Hanc operam tibi offero*. He employed their services—*Eorum operâ usus est*. Cicero's services to the state were great—*Ciceronis merita in civitatem magna fuerunt*. Diogenes rejected the services of others—*Diogenes ministeria aliorum rejecit*. This is of service to me—*Hoc mihi utile est*. This is of no service to me—*Hoc mihi inutile est*. This is of great service to me—*Hoc mihi magno usui est*. It is of no service for him to come to school—*Nihil eum attinet ad scholam venire*. 6. *Restitueret*. He was reinstated on the throne—*In regnum restitutus est*. 7. *Ne*—§ 52.

## CV.

Lucullus, parvo cum exercitu duodecim millium peditum et trium millium equitum, summa celeritate contra Tigranem profectus est, qui ejus adventum cum amplius ducentis et quinquaginta millibus militum expectabat. Uterque ducum pari confidentiâ victoriam sibi promiserat; nam, quum Lucullus copiarum suarum virtute niteretur, Tigranes putavit multitudini suæ resisti non posse. Tigranes adulationi tam assuetus fuit ut, quum hostem in mediam regionem penetrasset certior factus esset, hominem qui hoc ei dixit securi percuti juberet. Non prius se movere coepit quam nunciatum ei est Romanos, quum in Mithrobarzanem incidissent, eo profligato, parare Tigranocertam obsidere. Quo nuncio excitatus copias suas duxit; paucisque diebus Romanos assecutus est, qui castra in magna planitie habebant, eique præ ipsius exercitu contemnendi videbantur. Hoc tempore dixisse fertur, homines quos videret, si legati essent, nimis multos esse; sin milites, nimis paucos. Profligatus tamen est, et primus ipse fugit.

1. *Adventum expectabat*—Waited his arrival, or waited for his arrival. Punishment awaited him—*Pœna eum manebat*. He waited on the Emperor—*Imperatorem adiit*. *Expecto*—"I wait, expect, or look for (till one comes);" *Opperior*—"I wait for, tarry, or stay (till one is ready)." I will wait for your daughter—*Filiam tuam opperiar*. To wait till—*Expectare dum*. 2. *Niteretur*—XCVI. *Multitudini*—XXVIII. 4. *Eo profligato*. The conj. is necessarily suppressed, when the preceding part. is converted into the finite mood. 5. *Parare obsidere*. I am prepared to do it—*Paratus sum facere*. They were preparing for the work—*Se ad opus parabant*. They were preparing for war, flight—*Bellum, fugam parabant*. But, They were preparing for this war—*Se ad hoc bellum parabant*.

## CVI.

Athenæus narrat Cotyn, principum omnium qui in Thracia unquam regnaverint, maxime voluptarium, non prius coepisse infelicem esse quam Minervam offenderit. Simulans nuptias inter se et hanc deam celebratum iri, epulas splendidissimas parandas curavit, ad quas omnes ejus amici invitati sunt; et ubi dies advenit nihil nisi sponsa defuit. Quum aliquamdiu expectasset, unum ex satellitibus suis misit, qui videret num quâ in parte domus ea esset; et quum nuncius attulisset eam nusquam inveniri posse, rex ei tam iratus factus est, ut manu sua eum occideret. Missus est nuncius secundus, qui quum idem responsum attulisset, itidem interfectus est. Qui tertius ivit interemptus est quod Minervam in regia esse dixit.



1. *Celebratum iri*. "Was to be celebrated" is here an expression of *futurity*, but farther on "was nowhere to be found" is one of *impossibility*, and they are rendered accordingly. Compare § 43, *g*.  
 2. *Nuncius attulisset*. Deserters brought this word (intelligence)—*Desertores hunc nuncium attulerunt*, or *hoc nunciaverunt*. Word was brought him—*Ei nunciatum est*. 3. *Itidem*—In like manner. In such a manner that—*Ita ut*. In a wonderful manner—*Mirum in modum*. After the manner of slaves, or in a servile manner—*Servilem in modum*. In a manner—*Quodammodo*. In the most shameful manner—*Turpissimè*.

## CVII.

Pompeius, a Cæsare victus, (ad) Larissam fugit; sed ibi manere tutum non esse ratus, ante primam lucem profectus est et vesperi ad Tempe in Thessaliam pervenit, haud amplius tribus amicis comitantibus, qui ejus fortunæ participes esse statuerant. Noctem in casa piscatoria egit, et admodum turbatus non tam loci incommodis quam ipsius cogitationibus fuisse dicitur. "Egone," inquit, "unius horæ spatio gloriam omnem amisi quam triginta annis consecutus sum? Ego, qui in Africa, Hispania atque Oriente vici pluribusque ornatus sum triumphis quam ulli alii duci concessi unquam sunt, jam fortunæ ludibrium et infimus generis humani factus sum." Tam miræ quidem fuerunt res eæ quæ factæ erant, ut sibi vix persuadere posset veras eas esse, aut credere se non somnare.

1. *Ratus*. The pres. part. of *Puto* is not used in the sense of "thinking."  
 2. *Comitantibus*. Cicero in one instance makes *Comitor* govern the dat., but in every other the acc. 3. *Participes*. He shared in the dangers—*Particeps fuit periculorum*. A share of the spoils—*Pars spoliolorum*. He shared the spoils—*Spolia divisit*. 4. *Spatio*—Time, space; *tempus* is not the word here. 5. *Tam . . . quam*—XXXIX.  
 6. *Ornari triumphis*. The same phrase is used in X. To vote a triumph—*Decernere triumphum*. To grant a triumph—*Dare*, or *concedere triumphum*. To hold, refuse a triumph—*Agere, negare triumphum*. To triumph over one—*De aliquo triumphare*. The enemy was triumphed over—*De hoste triumphatum est*. The victorious consul led the conquered king in triumph—*Victor consul regem victum in triumpho* (sometimes in *triumphum* and *per triumphum*) *duxit*. The consul entered the city in triumph—*Consul urbem triumphans ingressus est*. *Consul urbem in triumpho ingressus est*—The consul entered the city in the triumph, but was not himself triumphing.

## CVIII.

VII. Id. Januar., anno Romæ septingentesimo vigesimo quinto, Octavius, consilio suo prius communicato cum senatoribus quibusdam quorum amicitiae maxime confidebat, etiam ingressus est et declaravit se summam potestatem deponere

velle. Hoc tempore orationem habuit, profectò non talem qualis apud Dionem Cassium occurrit, qui, noti ejus ingenii immemor, eum simul et arroganter et stultè loquentem facit. Qui secretum callebant, Octavio plauserunt; cæteri magnopere perturbati sunt. Ex iis qui eum sincerum esse credebant, alii lætati sunt quippe qui putarent se jugo servitutis liberatum iri; alii, quorum fortuna ab eo pendeat, quive dissensionibus civilibus fessi, tranquillitatem publicam optabant, doluerunt quod eum amissuri essent. In variis hisce sententiis, omnes tamen consenserunt in instando ei ut a proposito desisteret; nec multis argumentis opus fuit ad persuadendum ei ut cederet.

1. *Prius*—LXXX. 2. *Orationem habuit*—He made or delivered a speech. *Orationem fecit*—He made or composed a speech. 3. *Apud Dionem*. The prep. *in* would be incorrect here. This word is found in Cicero, in Cicero's orations—*Hoc verbum invenitur apud Ciceronem, in Ciceronis orationibus*. This word is found in many authors, in the works of many authors—*Hoc verbum invenitur apud multos auctores, in operibus multorum auctorum*. In Cicero, in Cicero would mean "in the person of Cicero," "in the person of the author." 4. *Occurrit*. "Occur" in the sense of "take place or happen" is *fit*. 5. *Simul et arroganter et stultè, or Simul arroganter simul stultè*—see XLV. 6. *Pendeat*—XCVI. 7. *Doluerunt*. He was grieved at the folly of his degenerate sons—*Ei stultitia filiorum degenerum dolorem attulit, or Ei stultitia degenerum filiorum dolori fuit, and see LXIX*. 8. *Amisuri essent*—Were about, going, likely to lose him. *Amitterent*—Were losing him. 9. *In variis hisce sententiis*—Notwithstanding, in, amidst these various opinions. "Notwithstanding" used as a conj. may be made by *quamvis* or *etiamsi*, and, as an adv., by *nihilominus*; thus, He treated them with indulgence, notwithstanding his knowledge of their wickedness—*Eos indulgenter tractavit, quamvis eorum nequitiam notwithstanding his imprisonment, the prophet reproached the Jews with their crimes*—*Vates, quamvis in carcerem conjectus sciret, Not scelera exprobravit. Notwithstanding its being usual esset, the Jews habitants of the city to do this*—*Etiam incolarum urbis with, Judæis facere*. I forbade him, but he did it notwithstanding—*Eum erat hoc bidden him*—*Quamvis vetuerim, fecit. Notwithstanding my having vetui, culties, the soldiers did not complain*—*In his difficultatibus, milites tamen non questi sunt. Notwithstanding this concord, they were just*—*In hac concordia tamen just fuerunt*. 10. *Consenserunt* were just *stando, &c*—§ 51, e, and LXXII. 11. *Nec argumentis opus fuit ad* &c. This use of *opus fuit* is different from that noticed in in-6; it being joined with an abl. as well as with a verb. in XLIII.

## CIX.

Anno mundi ter millesimo nongentesimo quadragesimo septimo, Cyrus, rebus Babylone compositis omnibusque hos-

tibus suis victis, iter suscepit in Persiam, ubi pater ejus materque vivebant, qui ætate jam proveci fuerunt, quosque per multos annos non viderat. Non opus est ut hic commemoremus quomodo exceptus sit, aut quam læti parentes fuerint quum iis dixisset se in re nulla quam unquam suscepisset cedere coactum esse; se neque hosti neque alii ulli homini quidquam quod crudele aut injustum vocari posset, fecisse; omniaque facta sua videri toti populo placere. Quum in Persia tamdiu quamdiu potuit mansisset, tandem discessit; et per Mediam rediens in Cyaxarem incidit, qui eo adeo delectatus est ut unicam filiam suam ei in matrimonium daret, eumque sibi hæredem institueret.

1. *Tamdiu quamdiu posset* (compare § 32)—“All the time he could, or, as long as he could.” *All* that we know of him, is, that he was very rich—*Hoc unum de eo scimus, eum ditissimum fuisse.* *All* that we read of him leads us to admire his character—*Quæcunque de eo legimus nos adducunt ut ejus mores admiremur.* The former sentence is evidently different from this, there being only *one* thing known, whereas in the latter there may be *many.* *All* with a superlative is made by *quisque*, as, *All the best of them did so—Optimus quisque ita fecit, quisque* always following the superlative. He was *all but* slain—*Modo* (or *tantum*) *non interfectus est.* 2. *Eo delectatus est.* *Delector* is followed by the abl. either of a *person* or a *thing*; *oblector* takes the abl. of a *thing*, but the abl. of a *person* with *cum.* The father was delighted (amused) *with the boy—Pater puero delectatus est.* The father was delighted *with the boy's progress—Pater pueri progressu delectatus est*; but with *oblector* these sentences will be—*Pater cum puero oblectatus est*, and *Pater pueri progressu oblectatus est.*

## CX.

Tarquinius, Roma expulsi, compluribus vicinarum gentium persuaserunt ut sibi, in regnum sese restituere conantibus, auxilium ferrent. Inter alios principes qui adducti sunt ut sese iis jungerent bellumque Romanis inferrent, fuit Porsena, rex unius ex Etruriæ civitatibus, apud quem vixerant postquam in exilium missi erant. In hoc bello virtus Horatii Coclitis, nobilis Romani, admodum insignis fuit. Pugnam sustinuit contra totas copias quæ cæteros Romanos in fugam verterant, quoad tandem pons in quo stabat rescissus est; tumque in Tiberim, qui inter eum et urbem interjacebat, desiliit; et fama fert, eum, etsi armis suis oneratum hostiumque telis petitus, tranasse atque ad amicos suos incolumem pervenisse. Quæ historici antiqui de Coclite narrant, mirabiliora quam veriora videntur.

1. *Apud quem*—“With whom, at whose court, or in whose territory and under whose protection;” *cum quo* would mean “in whose com-

pany." *Apud me coenavit*—He supped with me, *i.e.*, at my house; but *Mecum coenavit*—He supped along with me, *i.e.*, in company with me, but perhaps not at my house. 2. *Postquam*—LVIII. 3. *Tumque*, or *quo facto*. 4. *Incolumentum*—XXXIII. 5. *Mirabilia quam veriora*—LV.

## CXI.

Quum Etrusci exercitus ingentes conscripsissent et Samnitium copiis suas junxissent, Romani bellum difficile ac periculosum sibi imminere viderunt, ideoque consulatum Fabio, imperatori veterano, deferre statuerunt. Munus Fabius invitissimus accepit. Dixit se multo seniore esse quam ut exercitibus præesset; se vigorem eum jam non habere qui ad bellum administrandum necessarius esset; et Romæ non deesse homines dignos quibus res committeretur. Modesta hæc recusatio populo auxit cupiditatem ut is eligeretur. Tum dixit legem esse quæ obstaret quominus ad hunc honorem proveheretur; sed tribuni declararunt se nolle lege ulla impediri; et Fabius tandem opus suscipere consensit.

1. *Samnitium copiis suas junxissent*—§ 19. 2. *Inminere*. He threatens my life—*Meo capiti imminet*. He threatens me with death—*Mortem mihi minatur*. This averted the threatened blow—*Hoc cladem imminentem avertit*. 3. *Seniorem*. Senior is frequently used without comparing, and then it signifies less than the positive *senex*, thus, *Senior*—An elderly man; *Senex*—An old man. The same may be said of other comparatives, when they do not compare things with each other. *Vinum est dulce*—The wine is sweet; but, *Vinum est dulcius*—The wine is somewhat sweet. 4. *Jam non*, or *amplius non*—"No longer, no more, not now as formerly." *Non diutius*—"No longer," comparatively, as, I staid no longer than he was speaking—*Non diutius quam is loquebatur mansi*. But, Xerxes said that he would no longer (not now, no more) buy Attic figs—*Xerxes dixit se jam (or amplius) non Atticas ficus empturum esse*; in this sentence *non diutius* would require to be understood as compared with some other period, *e.g.*, no longer than some one else did, or no longer than he himself had already done. 5. *Ut eligeretur*—"That he might be elected"—CII. and LXXXIX. "Have" has sometimes a stronger meaning than in these sentences, as, I had the bridge cut down—*Effeci ut pons rescinderetur*, or *curavi pontem rescindendum*. "Had to contend," "had to go," "had to be sought for," &c., are made by the part. in *duo*. 6. *Nolle*. *Nolo* has, except in the imperat., the same syntax as *Volo* (XIX.), viz. the inf., the acc. with inf., or *ut* with subj. according to the connection or the nature of the sentence in which it occurs. I do not choose to come—*Nolo venire*. I should not like that another plan were adopted—*Nolim aliud consilium capi*. I should not like them to conquer—*Nolim ut ii vincant*. I would not have you to do it—*Nolim facias*, it being better to suppress *ut* in this sentence.

## CXII.

Sardanapalus, regum Assyriorum ultimus, tam effeminatus, fuisse dicitur, ut non solum omnia negotia publica negligeret,

sed etiam omnes viriles exercitationes odio haberet, sumptoque muliebri vestitu, perpetuò inter feminas sederet, earum vocem imitaretur, et lanam unà cum iis neret. Aliquot ex ejus ducibus, qui de re aliqua gravi cum eo colloqui voluerunt, quibus tamen omnis ad eum aditus denegatus est, certiores facti quomodo tempus traduceret, indignati sunt tam multos viros fortes parere homini qui videretur dolere se mulierem natum non esse; et conjurationem cum Beloso, sive Belocho, Babylonis præfecto, inierunt, ut eum regno privarent. Sardana- palus, quum de eorum consilio audivisset, ducenta auri talenta ei proposuit qui eos interfecisset, duplicemque summam si sibi in manus vivi traditi essent. Nemo tam turpis inventus est qui his præmiis alliceretur; et Sardana- palus, prælio victus, sese in regiam inclusit, ubi, rogo exstructo, se et omnia bona sua cremavit anno post orbem conditum circiter ter millesimo ducentesimo.

1. *Ultimus*—XCIV. 2. *Odio haberet*. *Odio* is, in this phrase, the dat. 3. *Perpetuo*—Continually, without ceasing, without interruption, perpetually; it has not the idea of *eternity* or *length of duration*, but merely that of *continuous, unbroken duration*; so too with *perpetuus*. *Perpetua sedes*—A continuous, unbroken seat, as a bench. 4. *Indignati sunt*. If reference were had to one single act exciting indignation, the expression *indigne tulerunt* would be more suitable. He felt indignant at such treatment—*Indigne tulit se ita tractari*. 5. *Tam turpis qui*. Compare *tamdiu ut in LIX*. 6. *Cremare*—"To burn, consume with fire"—VII. 7.

### CXIII.

Catharina Medicea mortua est morbo qui dolore contractus esse vulgo creditur. Femina superba crudelisque fuit, ejusque ambitionis quam nihil, nisi honores amplissimi, explere posset. Per triginta amplius annos, nunc novis motibus excitandis, nunc iis qui jam exorti erant sedandis, se tam molestam fecerat, ut inter nobiles quorum contentionibus semper ita usa esse videtur ut potestatem suam augeret, multis, qui ut ante alios omnes moerent filia ejus expectavit, persuaderi non posset ut gaudium suum celarent, nec prohiberi possent quominus convenirent ut inter se gratularentur. Non suam solum auctoritatem sed etiam filiorum suorum, qui tres fuerunt, magnam esse voluit; et, declarante astrologo unumquemque eorum regem futurum esse, sibi stulte persuasit se omnes alium aliâ in terrâ, regnantes visuram esse, et quam maximâ assiduitate regna iis quæsit.

1. *Ejus ambitionis*—Of an ambition, of such an ambition, of that ambition. *Ejus* is necessary as descriptive of *ambitionis*, showing that her am-

bition was of a particular kind or degree. Without the pronoun qualifying *ambitio*, the meaning would be that "ambition," the "principle of ambition," could not be satisfied; and moreover, without a qualifying adj. here, and in cases like this, the syntax would be faulty; for we must never say *vir ambitionis*, but, *vir ambitiosus*—"A man of ambition." With an adj., however, A man of great, or so great, ambition—*Vir magna*, or *tantæ ambitionis*. Compare LXXXI. 1. 2. *Posset*. The use of the subj. here implies, that "nothing but the highest honours could satisfy, that these honours never were attained, and therefore she was never satisfied." The indic. would denote that "though nothing but the highest honours could satisfy her, yet she attained these honours and was satisfied." 3. *Qui ut*, the rel. taking the first place in its clause. Compare such expressions as *Quod quum cognovisset*, also L., 1. 4. *Multis persuaderi non posset, nec prohiberi possent*—§ 66. 5. *Non suam solum auctoritatem sed etiam filiorum*—§ 19.

## CXIV.

Bellum Hispaniense contra Pompeii filios ortum est ex intolerabili unius ex Cæsaris legatis crudelitate, quæ populum ad deficiendum stimulavit. Cneius, filius Pompeii natu maximus, hoc motu ad bellum contra Cæsarem redintegrandum usus est, et, suadente Catone, sese iis qui rebellaverant præfecit. Quum frater ejus Sextus, qui magnâ cum classe venit, et reliquæ exercitus qui in Africa dispersus erat, se ei junxissent, jam tantis copiis præfuit ut putaret vix fieri posse ut Cæsar vinceret. Historici non commemorant quot milites Cæsar contra hostem tam formidolosum proficisci jusserit; hoc tantum scimus eum putasse periculum ejusmodi esse ut sibi ipsi adesse necessarium esset. Si belli administratio aliis commissa esset, admodum verisimile est Pompeios victores futuros fuisse; nam Cæsar ipse tam graviter pressus est ut desperare inciperet, et sibi mortem consciscere in animo haberet.

1. *Unus est*—"Availed, or made use of." His words were of no avail (*had no effect*)—*Ejus verba nihil valuerunt*. Doing this will be of no avail (*will do no good*)—*Hoc facere nihil proderit*. So let my prayers avail you as you obey me in these things—*Ita preces meæ tibi prosint ut mihi his in rebus obtemperas*. 2. *Junxissent*—XCIV. 3. *Vinceret*—XCVII. 4. *Quot*—XXVIII. 5. *Adesse*, &c.—"That it was necessary for himself to be present."

## CXV.

Ad Henricum Quartum, proficiscentem ad provinciam quæ defecerat subigendam, clerici, qui Lutatiam Parisiorum frequentes convenerant, ibique variis de rebus deliberantes diu sederant, universi venerunt orantes ut statim audirentur. Ad eum introducti dixerunt se ceterumque ordinem suum incom-

modis magnis laborare, multasque corruptelas, quas corrigere ejus non suum esset, in ecclesiam irrepsisse. Rex cui eorum oratio nequaquam displicuit, longum responsum reddidit, cujus hæ sunt partes præcipuæ: "Utrum negligentia vestra, quam fuisse maximam bene notum est, mala de quibus querimini illata sint, an ab insanabili eorum scelere qui vobis totique sacerdotum generi invident proficiscantur, mihi nunc querendi tempus non est; sed sive penes vos ipsos, sive alios culpa, dubitari non potest quin remedium celeriter adhiberi debeat. Quod ad me ipsum attinet, omnia quæ potero faciam ad id quod bonum est promovendum; vosque enixe hortor ut æque exemplo ac præcepto doceatis.

1. *Variis de rebus.* *De varietate rerum* would mean "concerning the variety of things or subjects." 2. *Universi*—"all together in a body"—is nearly the same as *Cuncti*—"all joined, all at once, or at the same time." *Cuncti fleverunt*—All wept (at the same time). *Omnes fleverunt*—All wept (whether at the same time or not). All nature is under His control—*Universa natura sub Ejus imperio est.* 3. *Quas corrigere ejus non suum esset*—To correct which, was his duty not theirs. 4. *Cui eorum oratio displicuit*—"Whom their speech displeased," the subst. becoming the nom. to the verb. "Pleased, or displeased with" in connection with verbal clauses; I am pleased with your reading this part well—*Mihi placet quod hanc partem bene legisti.* I will be displeased with your reading this part ill—*Mihi displicebit si hanc partem male legeris.* He was displeased with what was going on—*Quæ agebantur ei displicuerunt.* 5. *Utrum . . . an.* The uncertain and emphatic point in this sentence is "whether your negligence or the wickedness of others is the cause of the evils," and therefore *utrum . . . an* are so placed as to give these two probable causes prominence and emphasis. Observe the position of *sive* . . . *sive* following.

## CXVI.

Thomas Arundellius, quum Hungaris magno usui fuisset in bello, quod cum Turcis anno millesimo quingentesimo nonagesimo quinto gerebant, amplis præmiis a rege affectus, et comes Hungarici imperii creatus est. Quum ad Angliam rediisset, exorta est quæstio num hujusmodi titulus, ab externo principe delatus, domi admittendus esset. Arundellius et amici ejus contenderunt honorem publicum, a quocunque tributum, ubique ratum esse debere; sed veteres nobiles, hoc de dignitate sua derogare rati, affirmarunt neminem posse talem honorem nisi a rege suo accipere; rem ita se in aliis terris habere, et, verbi causâ, Atticum in civitatem Atheniensium adscisci recusasse, ne sua civis (*gen.*) Romani jura amitteret. Elizabetha, quæ regina tum erat, tandem consultâ dixit se oves suas nullius nisi suam ipsius notam gerere passuram esse.

1. *Amplis promissis affectus.* He rewarded him with the turnip—*Eum rapo remuneratus est.* 2. *Externo*—II. 3. *Sua civis (gen.) jura*; compare with *nullius nisi suam ipsius notam* under, and see § 31.

## CXVII.

Tres filii Constantini Magni bellum inter se per duodecim annos gesserunt, quoad tandem, duobus ex iis interfectis, Constantius dominus totius orbis Romani relictus est. Luxuria tamen mersus, non potuit solus imperii onus sustinere; atque in auxilium assumpsit Constantium Gallum, qui fere solus e propinquis ejus restabat, nam communem ediderat cædem eorum quos sibi molestos fore putavit. Gallus hoc tempore in carcere fuit; sed Constantius eum liberatum creatumque Cæsarem in orientem in expeditionem contra Parthos misit. Gallus tamen talis non fuit qualem Constantius eum esse existimaverat; nam ii historici, quibus facillime credi potest, narrant eum, a Constantina uxore sua instigatum, multa crudelia fecisse conatumque esse hominum animos a Constantio alienare. Revocatus igitur interfectusque est.

1. *Inter se*—§ 29. 2. *Orbis Romani*—LIII. 3. *Dominus*—Master, owner, he to whom a thing belongs, whose property it is. *Magister*—Master, he who has charge of a thing. *Dominus navis*—The owner of the ship. *Magister navis*—The master of the ship, he who has charge of the ship. The same person may perhaps be both *Dominus* and *magister navis*, that is, the owner may be also master. 4. *Communem eædem.* His general character was bad—*In rebus plerisque mores ejus pravi fuerunt.* To come to a general engagement with one—*Cum summis copiis cum aliquo pugnare.* The generality of the people—*Pars maxima populi.* 5. *Crudelia*—XCIV. 1.

## CXVIII.

Sunt scriptores qui affirmant Amazones ad flumen Thermo-dontem convenisse, ut bellum Græcis inferrent. Theseus Atheniensis Antiopen earum reginam asportaverat, variasque alias injurias a principibus Græcis acceperant, eo præcipuè tempore quo ab Hercule victæ sunt. Incitatæ promissis Scytharum, qui eas ante adjuverant quorumque auxilium jam majus futurum erat, in Thraciam navigarunt, quumque inde in terram Atticam transissent, castra in eo loco posuerunt, qui postea ager Amazonius appellatus est. Theseus, comitante Antiope, proelium cum iis commisit, et post acre cruentumque certamen victor fuit. Expectari potuisset ut Antiope sese Amazonibus iterum jungeret, sed pro marito suo fortiter pugnavit, dicens se tam benigne ab eo tractatam esse ut eum deserere non posset.



1. *Theseus Atheniensis*, not *Athenarum*. So, Philip of Macedon, Basil of Muscovy, a man of Sparta—*Philippus Macedo*, *Basilius Muscovita*, *Vir Spartanus*, &c. 2. *Futurum erat*—Was going to be. Compare with "was to be admitted" in CXVI.

## CXIX.

Mortuo Maximiliano, anno millesimo quingentesimo undevigesimo, Frederico, Electori Saxoniae, vacuum imperium oblatum est a cæteris Electoribus, qui eum gubernatorem esse tantopere cupierunt, ut, postquam ad eum scripserunt, domum ejus adirent, instarentque ei ut munus susciperet. Ea, tamen, Frederico magnanimitas fuit, ut honorem rejiceret, et, rogatus ut nominaret eum quem eo dignissimum existimaret, respondit neminem tanto oneri ferendo sibi tam idoneum videri, quam Carolum, Archiducem Austriae, Maximiliani nepotem. Carolus ideo electus est; atque ut gratum animum significaret, a Frederico petivit ut grandem pecuniam vel ipse acciperet vel saltem servis suis dari pateretur. Ad hoc Fredericus dixit, quod ad se ipsum attineret, se pecuniam aspernari; servos eam, si vellent, accipere posse; sed, si ita fecissent, iis ex domo sua statim migrandum esse.

1. *Ea magnanimitas ei fuit*—§ 1, and CXIII. 1. 2. *Quem dignissimum existimaret*, or *qui dignissimus ei videretur*, were it not that *videor* has to be used in next clause. 3. *Quam Carolum*—"As (he said that) Charles." 4. *Gratum animum*—Gratitude. *Ingratus animus*—Ingratitude. Grateful for deliverance—*Gratus ob liberationem*. 5. *Ad hoc dixit*—To this he said. *Huic dixit*—To him he said. 6. *Quod ad se ipsum attineret*. An idiom closely allied to this is "as to" before a verb; as, *As to John's lingering*, &c.—*Quod Joannes moratus est*, &c., which is an abridgment of *Quod attinet ad id quod Joannes moratus est*, and is the form used with verbs, in cases like this. *As to his thinking so, that matters little*—*Quod is ita putat, id parum refert*. They say that, as to his thinking so, that matters little—*Dicunt, quod is ita putet, id parum refert*. 7. *Sed si ita fecissent*. Were the Eng. "But, if they did" (without *so*), the Lat. would be, *Sed si accepissent*, not *fecissent*. Compare XCV. 2.

## CXX.

Nescio possitne commemorari princeps ullus qui temporibus recentibus floruit, de quo sententiae magis diversae, quam de Henrico Secundo, Galliae rege, habeantur. Nonnullis placet majorem ei laudem deberi quam adhuc unquam acceperit, eum dignum esse qui inter eos numeretur qui de patria sua optime meriti sint, et vix aliud ullum regnum gloriosius, quam ejus, fuisse. "Nonne is," inquiunt, "magnus habebitur, qui Galliae potestatem eò usque auxit, ut eae ipsae civitates quae

molestissimæ fuerant, non solum cedere cogerentur, sed ejus amicitiam primæ peterent? Potestne de memoria excidere quam audax et fortunatus fuerit, eumque omnibus in rebus commodo suo minus quam populi utilitatibus studuisse?" Adjiciunt nihil toti regno utilius esse potuisse quam pacem cui assenserit, ita enim civitatem quiete qua indigeret aliquamdiu fruitam esse; eum, connubio inter suam adversariique sui familiam efficiendo, tranquillitati publicæ consuluisse; mortemque ejus ab omnibus defletam esse.

1. *Possitne*. The indef. interrog. enclitic *ne* has the same effect in determining the mood of the verb as *if*, like any other interrog., it had been placed before it. *Nescio num*—I know not whether, *if* (but expressive of greater doubt than the other form). *Haud scio an*—I am not sure but. 2. *Qui floruit*; this rel. clause being explanatory. But for *de quo sententiæ habeantur*, see § 50-2. 3. *Deberi*. "Entitled to" might be made by *dignus* here, were it not that *dignus* requires to be used in next clause, and the repetition would be disagreeable. He was *entitled to credit*—*Fide dignus fuit*. He was *better entitled to the command*—*Imperio dignior fuit*. 4. *Ed usque* (or *adeo*) *auxit*. They were reduced to *such a degree of despair* that—*Ed desperationis redacti sunt ut*. To *what a degree of misery* are we brought!—*Quò miseriæ perducti sumus*! In the highest degree—*Vel maxime*. In the highest degree possible—*Quam maxime*. 5. *Potestne, &c.*—"Can it be forgotten how bold he was?" *Eumque, &c.*—"And (can it be forgotten) that he?"

## CXXI.

Aratus Sicyonius, quum pater ejus ab Abantida tyranno interfectus est, septem tantum annos habuit. Quum inter tumultum effugisset, domum vicinam ingressus est cujus ea esset ignarus. Domus tyranni sororis fuit, quæ misericordiâ adeo commota est ut puerum per eam noctem occultaret, et postmodum Argos clam asportandum curaret, ubi summa cura educatus est. Ad annum vigesimum vix pervenerat, quum consilium patriæ suæ liberandæ cepit, et tam prudens fuit ut urbe prius potiretur quam tyrannus qui tum regnabat eum pervenisse scivit. Ita Sicyon e servitute liberata est, idque ne uno quidem homine interfecto; Aratus enim cives a cæde abstinere jusserat, dicens eos, qui ipsi tyrannide tamdiu laborassent, et jam liberi essent, non debere facta eorum imitari qui crudelitate odiosi atque intolerabiles facti essent.

1. *Quum pater, &c.* *Quum* here signifies "at the time when," which signification it always has when it follows *vix*, as under. 2. *Annos habuit, or annos natus fuit*. 3. *Ea esset*. Unless *ea* were expressed, the form of the sentence is such that the subject of *esset* might be doubtful. 4. *Domus sororis fuit*—The house belonged to the sister. My house and that of my sister—*Mea et sororis meæ domus*. 5. *Commota est*. "Touched" is metaphorical, and cannot be made by

*tango*. 6. *Occultaret*—Concealed, hid, put out of sight. *Celare*—To conceal, keep secret, not to reveal; as *Celare gaudium*—To conceal joy. 7. *E servitute liberata est*. Compare XXVIII. 8. *Idque*—§ 65. 9. *Abstinere*. He abstained from slaughter—*Se a cæde abstinuit*, or, *a cæde abstinuit*, or, *cæde abstinuit*. All sorts of food were abstained from—*Ab omnibus generibus cibi abstinencebatur*.

## CXXII.

Dissensiones de Romuli successore Romanos diu suspensos tenuerunt; non quod cujusquam hominis privati ambitio motus excitaret, sed quia ortum est certamen inter præcipuas duas gentes ex quibus curiæ Romanæ tum constabant. Alba Romulo primos urbis incolas suppeditaverat, et Sabini, sub Tatio rege suo, numerum auxerant. Inter eos igitur qui cum Romulo venerant, et eos qui a Tatio adducti erant, sæviit controversia. Illi contenderunt se, utpote urbis conditores, debere e populo suo regem eligere; hi affirmarunt se jam satis indulgentes fuisse, qui Romulum solum, mortuo Tatio, regnare passi essent, atque ex veteri pacto, proximum principem Sabinum esse oportere.

1. *Non quod . . . sed quia*—§ 53. 2. *Ex quibus constabat*—Of which it consisted or was made up. His security consisted in the prince—*In principe ejus securitas constabat*. The army consisted of not less than 30,000 foot—*Exercitus fuit non minus triginta milia peditum*. Happiness does not consist in wealth—*Felicitas non in divitiis posita est*. 3. *Igitur*—LVIII. 4. *Ex veteri pacto*. According to his command—*Ex ejus præcepto*. According to their usual custom—*Mores solito*. According to the fables—*Ut est in fabulis*. According to other accounts—*Ut alii narrant*. The effects will be various, according to the different dispositions of those who hear—*Varii erunt effectus, pro* (in proportion to) *diversis eorum, qui audiunt, ingeniis*. He said that he would praise or censure him, according as he deserved—*Dixit se eum, prout mereretur, laudaturum aut reprehensurum esse*. 5. *Proximum*—LXIX.

## CXXIII.

Quum Saraceni impetum in Calabriam fecissent, Malacenus Patricius ad eos repellendos missus est, eique Paschalius, qui magno exercitui præerat, sese junxit. Hi duces, quum in Calabriam pervenissent, fecerunt quasi in hostium terra essent, incolis nocentes eosque bonis spoliantes. Tanta quidem fuit, eorum crudelitas, ut historicus antiquus, cui facile credi potest, dicat paucos hostes tam barbaros futuros fuisse. Abulchares, dux Saracenus, pridie quam proelium commisit, milites suos convocatos ita allocutus est; "Oculis vestris videtis quomodo ii ad quos subigendos venimus ab iis tractentur qui eos adjuvare debuerunt. Talis sit virtus nostra qualem ad-

*huc semper eam inveni, et puto nobis non ita difficile fore utrosque superare."*

1. *Eosque spoliantes*—§ 66. 2. *Pridie quam commisit*. This was done the day before—*Hoc pridie factum est*, *pridie* being used as an adverb, like *antea* or *postea*. On the day before he arrived—*Pridie quam pervenit*. On the 30th of April—*Pridie calendas Maias*, lit. on the day before the calends of May. Although *pridie* is followed by the acc. in speaking of dates as here, it cannot be used to govern the acc. of general words, e.g., On the day before the battle—*Pridie quam pugnatum est*, or *proelium factum est*, not *pridie proelium*. We have here three uses of *pridie*; and it may be observed that *postridie* follows the same analogy, with this exception, that it does not occur with the acc. This happened the day after—*Hoc postridie factum est*. This happened the day after the battle—*Hoc factum est postridie quam proelium factum est*. *Pridie* and *Postridie* are abbreviated forms of *Priore die*, and *Postero die* "on the day before," and "on the day following;" when joined with *quam* they lit. signify "on a day earlier than," and "on a day later than." Compare the use of *ante*, *antea*, *antequam*, and *post*, *postea*, *postquam*. 3. *Ita*—"Very, so, that." "Very" is not here the sign of the superlative, as it often is; for the meaning has nothing of a superlative force. *Non ita difficile fore*—There will be no great difficulty, or it will not be that or so difficult, i.e., there will be hardly any difficulty. But, *Non difficillimum fore*—it will not be very or most difficult. He is not a very good scholar—*Non ita doctus est*, as much as to say, "he is rather a poor scholar," *Non doctissimus est*, or *non admodum (valde) doctus est*—He is not a very, most learned man. So, *Non ita verisimile est*, and *Non verisimillimum est*; *Justinus non ita elegans scriptor est*, and *Justinus non elegantissimus scriptor est*. Not long after—*Haud multo post*. Not very long after—*Haud ita multo post*.

## CXXIV.

Minerva, quæ per totum bellum Trojanum dicitur Græcis amica fuisse, eosque semper hortata esse, ne incepto prius desisterent, quam vel Helena principi suo reddita (esset), vel hostium urbs deleta esset, quum de alto coelo descendisset, et vidisset Diomedem, cui plusquam alii ulli totius gentis favebat, otiosum stantem et querentem se a Pandaro vulneratum esse, neque auxilium, quo indigeret, adipisci posse, moestum heroem (vel heroa) ingenti hastâ suâ tetigit, sed ita ut ei non noceret, et his vel similibus verbis usa est; "Tu, cui quotidie suadeo ut pugnes, cui vires plusquam humanas suppedito, quique tamen tam faciliè terreris, dignus non es, qui Tydei filius voceris."

1. *Minerva* . . . *moestum heroem tetigit*; all the intermediate clauses are subordinate—§ 35. 2. *Incepto desisterent*. A man of an enterprising spirit—*Vir animi audentis*. 3. *Plusquam*. He was more than a match for me—*Mihi plusquam par fuit*. More than 20 trees fell—*Amplius viginti arbores ceciderunt*. He was elated with more than prudent joy—*Gaudio plusquam prudenti elatus est*. I gave more money for this book than for that—*Emi hunc librum pluris quam illum*. He

used more violence—*Majore vi usus est, or Majorem vim adhibuit*. He demanded nothing more than, &c.—*Nihil amplius postulavit quam ut, &c.*

## CXXV.

Arcesilao, qui a Learcho fratre suo interemptus est, in regnum Cyrenes successit non interfecto, Eryxo enim, irata Arcesilai uxor, eum statim obtruncandum curaverat, sed Battus, qui secundus ibi regum fuit, qui nomen illud insigne gesserunt. Quum hicce Battus, cujus jure erat regnum, deformis et claudus forte esset, Cyrenæi, qui omnes patrem ejus amaverunt, dubitarunt num ei parerent, et unus ex iis ei prætereunti, apertè dixit; "Tu, Batte, qui non potes hominum aliorum more ambulare, is non es qui nos regas, qui expectamus, ut nos currere doceas. Etsi tu materque tua, te quippe qui Arcesilai filius sis, regnare debere, putatis, nos alium præferemus; nam etsi ad prælium nos ducere velles, non posses."

1. *Dubitarunt num.* They hesitated to obey—*Parere dubitarunt*. He expressed a doubt whether Hercules could have killed so many thousand persons—*Dixit se dubitare an Hercules tot millia hominum interficere potuisset*. 2. *More*—LXXXVIII. *Hominum*—CIII. 3. *Præferemus*. *Præfero* and *præpono* signify "to prefer," but in a different sense from *malo*; they are "to set a higher value on one thing than on another," "to think, esteem one thing preferable to another;" *Malo*—"to prefer, to wish to have, do, or get one thing rather than another." There are some who prefer Tacitus to Livy—*Sunt qui Tacitum Livio præferant*. Solomon preferred wisdom to riches, i.e. Solomon wished to get or to have wisdom rather than riches—*Salomon sapientiam quam divitias maluit*. They preferred the rapid Tribrachys to the slow Molossus—*Rapidum Tribrachym tardo Molosso prætulerunt*. He preferred censure to praise—*Reprehensionem quam laudem maluit*. Some prefer one comfort, some another—*Alii alia commoda malunt*. I should prefer receiving to doing an injury—*Injuriam accipere quam facere malim*. I should prefer being censured to being envied—*Malim reprehendi quam mihi (§ 66) invideri*. I should prefer being envied to being censured—*Malim mihi invideri quam me (§ 66) reprehendi*. *Malo* is followed by the inf., and by the acc. with inf., but rarely by *ut* with subj. They preferred losing to gaining the battle—*Maluerunt vinci quam vincere*. I had rather that you did it—*Malim te facere, rarely ut facias*.

## CXXVI.

Proximâ hebdomade de Cyrenæis locuti sumus, quorum regem Battum, ejus nominis tertium, vobis tum dictum est claudum fuisse, neque exercitui præesse potuisse. Quum complura simul bella iis imminerent, ducem aliquamdiu quæsierunt; et nullo invento, cui copiarum suarum curam committere possent, tandem statuerunt ad oraculum Apollinis mittere et cum eo (or apud eum) queri de calamitate quâ la-

borarent. Eorum legati, quum Delphos pervenissent, expositis mandatis suis, hoc responsum a Pythia acceperunt; "Viri Cyrenæi, ego, quæ antequam venistis audiveram quam misera conditio vestra sit, jussa sum vos certiores facere auxilium Arcadum vobis utile futurum esse, qui alterius nullius gentis amicitia fruimini. Ego et Apollo non suademus ut regi quem nunc habetis resistatis, quod factum et injustum et difficile esset; sed comparetur socius qui ea faciat quæ Battus non potest."

1. *Proxima*—LXIX. and XCIV. 2. *Quorum regem vobis dictum est claudum fuisse*—Whose king you were told was lame; or, You were told that whose king was lame; or, That whose king was lame, was told to you. 3. *Laborarent*—indirect, being included in the sentiments of the Cyreneans. 4. *Viri Cyrenæi*—CXVIII. 1. 5. *Misera*—Wretched, miserable. *Miser*—"A wretch," with reference to his condition, or circumstances, e.g., his poverty. *Perditus*—"A wretch," with reference to his abandoned morals.

## CXXVII.

Dionysius pacem cum Carthaginiensibus fecerat, alio nullo consilio nisi ut nuper partum suum Syracusis imperium firmaret, eaque pararet quæ ad bellum acrius gerendum necessaria essent. His rebus perfectis, Syracusanis convocatis exposuit quam potentes Carthaginienses facti essent, quamque periculosi essent futuri, si semel ullâ Siciliæ parte potiti essent, quod dixit eos certe velle, et jam forsitan effecturos fuisse, nisi pestilentia quæ in Africa sæviret, finem interim eorum inceptis imposuisset. Tum eos multis verbis hortatus est ut occasionem, quæ oblata esset eorum auctoritatis frangendæ, arriperent. Dionysius ob crudelitatem a Syracusanis odio habitus est; sed inimicitie implacabiles, quas in Carthaginienses gerebant, fecerunt ut ejus orationem cum plausu acciperent. Itaque, ne indicto quidem bello, mercatores Carthaginienses, qui tum frequentes Syracusis habitabant, bonis omnibus spoliavit, declaravitque, si Carthaginienses se ultra interposuissent, omnes ex ea gente qui tum in Sicilia essent ut hostes tractatum iri.

1. *Consilio*—View, purpose, design. He had it in view (i.e., he intended) to make even his evil qualities subservient to, &c.—*In animo habuit efficere ut vel vitia ejus adjuvarent*, &c. This can be viewed in no other light than as a fable—*Hoc non nisi loco fabulæ haberi potest*. 2. *Exposuit*—XCVI. 3. *Quod*—"Which," viz., "to get possession of Sicily."

## CXXVIII.

Mortuo Constantino magno, interregnum quoddam Romæ fuit; et negotium omne publicum sub nomine demortui im-

peratoris per tres integros menses administratum est, quoad ejus filii, qui omnes ex Fausta, secunda ejus uxore, nati sunt, inter se de imperii partitione consenserunt. Facta horum juvenum, quibus nomina fuerunt Constantino, Constantio, et Constanti, nequaquam talia fuerunt qualia ex eorum educatione atque exemplo iis domi præbito jure expectare potuisses; contra, eorum ingenia tam prava fuerunt ut optimo suo patri, dum vivebat, perpetuo dolori essent. Omnes crudeles atque ambitiosi fuerunt; et, quanquam se christianos esse professi sunt, tamen adeo non alii alios amârunt adjuveruntque, ut quisque, eâ imperii parte quæ ei obtigerat non contentus, in occasionem frater fraudandi immineret.

1. *Interregnum quoddam.* He struck up a sort of or kind of peace—*Pacem quandam, or pacem cujusdammodi, confecit.* The country preserved a sort of name—*Regio nomen quoddam servavit.* They were a sort or kind of kings—*Fuerunt quasi reges.* A kind of popular eloquence—*Quædam popularis eloquentia.* But, This kind or sort of popular eloquence—*Hoc genus popularis eloquentiæ;* and, A popular eloquence of this sort—*Popularis eloquentia hujusmodi, or hujus generis.* 2. *Ea Fausta—XXV.* 3. *Inter se de partitione consenserunt.* It is agreed among all, or it is universally agreed, that this was a pestilence—*Inter omnes convenit (or constat) hanc pestem fuisse.* Writers are by no means agreed whether—*Inter scriptores nequaquam convenit num.* An agreement was come to about the money—*De pecunia convenit.* The consuls agreed that the victor should come—*Inter consules convenit ut victor veniret.* It was agreed that another should be sent—*Placuit alium mitti.* 4. *Facta.* A man of great courage (bravery) and conduct—*Vir magnæ virtutis consilique.* Under the conduct of Marius—*Mario duce.* He conducted himself well—*Bene se gessit.* He conducted the embassy well—*Bene legationem administravit.* 5. *Patri dolori essent.* He traced the thing to its source—*Rem a fonte repetiit.* 6. *Ea parte—§ 1.* 7. *Ei obtigerat.* The consuls determined by lot which of them should dedicate the temple—*Consules sortiti sunt uter templum dedicaret.*

### CXXIX.

Quum ostenderim quas Henrici defensores virtutes ejus fuisse dicant, jam restat ut narrem quid in alteram partem dictum sit. Qui igitur putant nimiam ei laudem tributam esse, affirmant quæcunque ei gloria ob primas ejus res gestas debeat, eam turpi perfidia ad quam postea confugerit maculari; in expeditione in quam profectus sit regni divitias inaniter esse profusas cladesque acceptas foediores quam ut ab ejus amicis nominarentur. Confitentur quidem pacem quæ facta esset necessariam fuisse, sed simul contendunt eam nequaquam fuisse honestam; copiis enim domi opus fuisse, earumque numerum adeo imminutum esse, ut conscribendæ essent aliæ quæ eas adjuverent. Nolunt concedere matrimonium in quod

filiam suam compulerit aut necessarium, aut utile, aut decorum fuisse; nec dubitant dicere eum non more regis sed militis gregarii mortuum esse.

1. *Narrem*—Should tell—do tell. 2. *Nequaquam*—XXI. 3. *Numerum, imminutum esse, compulerit, dubitant,* and *more,* have been already remarked upon.

### CXXX.

Pompeius in Hispaniam Citeriorem ut Proconsul missus est; quumque insperatum copiarum supplementum ex Italia accepisset, Numantiæ obsidionem per hiemem continuare statuit. Eum tamen fefellit spes quam conceperat se urbe potiturum esse; non solum enim magnum militum detrimentum frigore et morbis fecit, sed, id quod mirabilius fuit, Numantini fuerunt superiores eumque in omni certamine vicerunt. Tot malis tandem coactus est obsidionem solvere; metuensque ne reprehenderetur quum Romam rediisset, commodissimum ratus est pacem quandam cum hoste, quibus posset conditionibus, conficere; et ita administrata res est, ut Numantini finem belli priores cupere viderentur. Privatum convenit, ut sine conditionibus in deditionem venirent, quum necessarium hoc esset ad tuendam Proconsulis existimationem; sed fidem iis dederat se nihil amplius postulaturum esse, quam ut captivos transfugasque Romanos traderent, obsides paucos mitterent, et triginta talenta penderent.

1. *Obsidionem*—Siege. The distinction between "siege" and "blockade" is expressed by using *oppugnatio* for the former, and *obsidio* for the latter; as, The siege was turned into a blockade—*Oppugnatio in obsidionem versa est*. 2. *Spes*—XCIV.—3. *Id quod*—§ 65. 4. *Fuerunt superiores*. To derive advantage—*Fructum percipere*. All the advantage that they reaped, was, that they terrified the enemy—*Nihil aliud commodi perfecerunt nisi quod hostem terruerunt*. He turned the public bounty to his own advantage—*Liberalitatem publicam in commodum suum vertit*. He took advantage of the permission granted to the Jews of returning to their own country—*Veniendi usus est Judæis datâ ut ad patriam suam redirent*. He took advantage of this occurrence to dissolve the league—*Hâc re ad foedus dissolvendum usus est*. 5. *Conditionibus*. Terms of accommodation—*Conditiones pacis*. Reasonable terms—*Æquæ conditiones*. He addressed them in these terms—*Eos his verbis allocutus est*. The English term (word) imports—*Vox Anglica significat*. 6. *Priores, convenit, nihil amplius quam*.

### CXXXI.

Juliano, imperatori Romano, qui ex eo quod religionem Christianam deseruit Apostata appellatus est, successit Jovianus, vir longe alio ingenio, qui honorem sibi a militibus



oblatum prius accipere noluit, quam exploratum habuit, facta superioris imperatoris iis displicere, eosque revera Christianos esse. Simul atque electus est, in aciem contra Persas prodire coactus est; et ferunt, eum, si Tigrim transire potuisset nocte quadam quum hi in altera ripa dormientes jacerent, omnes interempturum fuisse; sed milites ejus, nandi imperitos et longo quoque itinere defessos, hoc efficere non potuisse. Postridie, præter ejus spem, Persæ legatos miserunt qui dicerent se pacem cum eo æquis conditionibus libenter facturos esse; et Jovianus, ut iis ostenderet bellum sibi cordi non esse, conditiones æquiores proposuit quam quæ petita ex eo erant.

1. *Ex eo quod*—From the circumstance that. 2. *Exploratum habuit*—He was assured. I assured him that no one should know—*Ei confirmavi neminem sciturum esse. Fides ei data est*—"Assurance was given him, or, he was assured," is not the same as *Exploratum habuit*—"He was assured, i.e., he had proof." 3. *Iis displicere, eosque esse*—§ 66. 4. *In altera ripa*—On the other, the opposite, bank. 5. *Sibi cordi non esse*. Nothing is more agreeable to me than this part—*Nihil gratius est mihi hac parte. Agreeably to his wish—Ex ejus voluntate*. 6. *Proposuit. Proponere conditiones* said of the victors; and *Ferre conditiones* of the vanquished. He proposed that a tax should be levied—*Auctor fuit ut vectigal cogeretur*. He proposed to them submission—*Iis deditionem suavit*. He proposed your example for his imitation—*Vestrum exemplum sibi imitandum proposuit*. He said that he would propose to the senate to have this done—*Dixit se senatui auctorem fore ut hoc fieret*. They said that being defeated they were not come to make any proposals, but to beg forgiveness—*Dixerunt se superatos non venisse ut conditiones ullas ferrent, sed ut veniam peterent*. They proposed a law—*Rogationem tulerunt*.

## CXXXII.

Fabula hujusmodi fuit, cui antiquissimi Græcorum credidisse videntur; Herculem, quum in Ægyptum pervenisset, a populo comprehensum esse, vinctumque et sertis redimitum, abductum esse ut ad Jovis aram immolaretur; eum aliquamdiu se continuasse, tantummodo rogantem ut liberaretur nec magnis suis viribus utentem; sed tandem, percipientem eos quorum in manibus esset, si omissi essent, non prius destituros esse quam id perfecissent quod facturos se esse minati essent, sese servare coactum esse omnes qui adessent interficiendo. Herodotus populares suos reprehendit qui tam creduli fuerint ut hanc fabulam acciperent, et dicit quicumque eam excogitaverit, eum ignarum fuisse consuetudinis Ægyptiorum, quibus nunquam sit permissum ut ulla animalia præter sues, tauros, mares vitulos, et anseres, immolarent. Historicus, quem commemoravimus, quoque dicit se dubitare an Hercules, quum solus esset, multa millia

hominum interficere potuisset; etsi ita loquendo de hac aliisque rebus videtur timere ne et diis et heroibus displiceat.

1. *Hujusmodi*—"Of this sort," "to this, the following effect." He foretold what effect his benign religion would have—*Prædixit quid benigna religio sua effectura esset*. The effect of which was that—*Unde effectum est ut*. He showed how various would be the effects of the speech—*Ostendit quam varii effectus orationis futuri essent*. This had the effect of changing his disposition—*Hoc effecit ut ejus indoles mutaretur*. They retreated with all their effects—*Cum omnibus bonis suis recesserunt*. To demand restitution of effects—*Res repetere*. To make restitution of effects—*Res reddere*. Without effect—*Frustra*. 2. *Aliquamdiu*—"For a while." It is not worth my while to come—*Mihi non est operæ pretium venire*. They thought it worth their while to write—*Scribere operæ pretium ducerunt*. He told them to laugh while it was in their power—*Is dixit ut riderent quamdiu possent*. While he was speaking, I was writing—*Dum is loquebatur, ego scribebam*.

### CXXXIII.

Alaricus, ex Epiro in Bavariam progressus, ad Stilichonem misit ad postulandum ut statim sibi daretur pecunia quæ exercitui suo penderetur; alioqui se in Italiam penetraturum et omnia ante se vastaturum. Plerique senatores putare videbantur hanc postulationem injustissimam esse, bellumque ei esse inferendum qui majestati Romanæ ita insultasset. Contra Stilicho, quique ab ejus partibus erant, huic consilio vehementer adversati sunt, contententes Alaricum nihil nisi æquum rogare. Ii quibus bellum placebat, cupierunt scire quomodo Stilicho tam cupidus esset pacis quæ emi non posset sine maximo Romanorum dedecore, quos potius deceret barbari insolentiam castigare. Ad hoc Stilicho respondit, Alaricum, Honorii jussu, in Epiro diu mansisse, expectantem ut adversus Arcadium adhiberetur; et quidquid pecuniæ ita consumpsisset, ei rependi debere. Hæc oratio senatui satisfecit; placuitque quatuor millia pondo auri Alarico dari.

1. *Misit ad Stilichonem*: *misit* being used absolutely. Compare the usage of *scribo*:—He wrote to Urban, requesting him to remove Erland—*Ad Urbanum scripsit, ut is Erlandum removeret*. But, He wrote two letters to Urban—*Binas ad Urbanum literas scripsit*. 2. *Ad postulandum*, or *postulandi causâ*; but not *ut postulare*, for then Stilicho might be supposed to be the subject of the verb; *ut* being capable of being translated by *requesting*, *bidding*, &c., in this and similar passages. Compare *Ad Urbanum scripsit, ut* (requesting him) *Erlandum removeret*; and *Ad patrem suum scripsit ut* (requesting him to, or, to introduce) *se ad Ducem introduceret*. 3. *Quæ penderetur*—Which might be paid. He paid me a penny—*Mihi as pendit, solvit, numeravit*. He paid me with a penny—*Me asse remuneravit*. 4. *Postulationem*—"A demand, or demanding." *Postulatum*—"A demand, the thing demanded" would not do here, for we could not say that "the thing demanded, i.e., the money was unjust;" it was the demanding of it that was unjust. The demands

were granted—*Postulata concessa sunt*, i.e., the things demanded were granted. The demand was of such a sort that I could not give an immediate reply—*Postulatio ejusmodi fuit ut statim respondere non possem*. 5. *Adhiberi*—"To be employed, or made use of (by another)"; *Occupari*—"To be employed, occupied, or busy (with one's own affairs)." 6. *Quidquid pecuniæ*, or *omnem pecuniam quam*.

## CXXXIV.

Spurina nobili atque illustri familia ortus est, et ab antiquis auctoribus inter optimos poetarum Lyricorum numeratur. Temporibus Vespasianorum floruit, qui studiis ejus faverunt; et pauci fuere, sive nobiles sive docti, qui magis colerentur quorumve amicitia avidius peteretur. Dux contra Breveterum factus est, et quanquam copię quibus præerat exiguæ præ hostium fuerunt, victoriam adeptus est quæ Romanis tam bene placuit, ut, ad eam commemorandam statuam triumphalem ei ponerent. Plinius dicit versus ejus suaves elegantesque fuisse, atque ex aliis rebus quas memorat, sunt temporibus hodiernis qui conjecerint eum Horatio soli secundum fuisse. Ne unum quidem verbum ex omnibus ejus scriptis servatum nobis est.

1. *Præ hostium, copiis* being understood (§ 19). Nothing in comparison with those things—*Nihil præ iis*. 2. *Ad eam commemorandam* or *ejus commemorandæ causâ*. 3. *Secundum*. Hannibal was inferior to no Roman general—*Hannibal nulli duci Romano cessit*. They were inferior to no other state in bravery—*Virtute alii nulli civitati cesserunt*. 4. *Hodiernis*, or *recentibus*. 5. *Ne unum quidem*. They could not so much as read—*Ne legere quidem potuerunt*. Not so much with the view of conquering—*Non tam eo consilio ut vinceret*. He feared nothing so much as that the enemy would escape—*Nihil tam timebat quam ne hostes effugerent*. He was so much more incensed—*Tanto magis ira incensus est*.

## CXXXV.

Ex eo tempore quo Michael Palæologus Latinos Constantinopoli expulit, imperium Græcum, quod et Christianorum et Turcarum direptionibus objectum, atque, ad hoc, motibus intestinis perturbatum erat, tantummodo nomen quoddam servavit. Cæca superstitio, quæ ne maxima quidem scelera coercuit, publica omnia consilia rexit. Andronicus, Palæologi filius, sibi persuaderi passus est, se suosque præcipuè gratiosos apud Deum esse, ideoque classem non esse necessariam. Ob hanc causam id præsidium penitus est neglectum; et consecutum est ut regio primò a piratis vastaretur, et inde a Turcis paragraretur.

1. *Ex eo tempore quo, or ex quo tempore.* 2. *Atque ad hoc*—"And in addition to this"—XCIII. 3. *Objectum.* The boy was *exposed* in a desert—*Puer in solitudine expositus est.* He *exposed* himself to danger—*Se periculo objecit*, i.e., threw himself against or in the way of danger. They *exposed* his crimes—*Ejus scelera patefecerunt.* 4. *Præcipue gratiosos apud Deum*—The especial favourites, or simply, the favourites of Heaven; *gratiosos apud Deum*—Favourites of Heaven. "Heaven" is used by metonymy for "God," and must not be made by *coelum*. *Coepio* was a great favourite with the senate—*Coepio admodum gratiosus apud senatum fuit.* Joseph was the favourite of his father Jacob—*Josephus a patre suo Jacobo præcipue* (or *pro omnes*) *dilectus est*, or *apud patrem præcipue gratiosus fuit*, or *patri suo omnium carissimus fuit.* 5. *Et consecutum est ut*—"And the consequence was that, or, and it followed that." In consequence of these laws many cruelties were committed—*Ex his legibus multa crudelia facta sunt.* This was the consequence of their rashness—*Hoc ex eorum temeritate consecutum est.* Asia, in consequence of its having been the cradle of the human race, has been the theatre, &c. —*Asia, ex eo quod fuit generis humani incunabula, theatrum fuit*, &c. And consequently he was compelled to flee—*Ideoque fugere coactus est.* He knew not of how great consequence this was—*Nesciebat quanti momenti hoc esset.* A man of great consequence among them—*Vir magnæ apud eos auctoritatis.*

## CXXXVI.

Zoroastres, Bactrorum rex, Astartes (*gen.*) amore captus atque ab ea desertus, quondam auditus esse dicitur secum ita loquens; "Verumne mihi parentes mei narraverunt an mendacium, mihi assentantes, excogitarunt, quum dixerunt me paulo postquam natus sim risisse, et suavitatem quæ in vultu meo consederit, talem fuisse qualis nunquam in ullius alterius infantis facie sit conspecta? Ego qui signa tam insolita ostendi, profecto expectare potuissem ut perpetua animi tranquillitate fruerer; sed quum invenerim, Astartem, quæ mihi carior quam vita ipsa fuit, amorem pro amore non reddere, omni solatio privor; et quo diutius vivo, eo major miseria mea est. De difficultatibus quæ in terris peregrinis peragrandis mihi subeundæ fuerunt, questus non essem, si modo mihi contigisset ut locum, quo Astarte mea ivit, deprehenderem; et jam, quum domum pervenerim, regnum meum dimittere possem, ut mihi subrideret ea sine quâ felix esse non possum."

1. *Risisse.* They laughed at him—*Eum riserunt.* But, They laughed to him—*Ei riserunt.* 2. *Natus sim, consederit, conspecta sit* are in this tense with reference to the time (present) Zoroaster speaks. 3. *Alterius* is often conveniently used in this case for *alius*, which might sometimes in prose give rise to ambiguity by being mistaken for the nom. masc. 4. *Facies*—"The face, i.e. the shape, form, or fashion of the face." *Vultus*—"The face, countenance, i.e. the expression of the face as indicating inward emotions." 5. *Perpetua*

—"Unbroken, uninterrupted." 6. *Contigisset*. I had the bad fortune to fall—*Mihi accidit ut caderem*. 7. *Pervenerim*—"I have arrived," with reference to present time. *Possem* and *subideret* are connected. "I could part with my crown in order that she might smile on me." *Mihi subideret*—compare *rideo* above.

## CXXXVII.

Diocletianus Salonis in Dalmatia humili genere natus est, et primo ut miles gregarius stipendia meruit. Brevi tamen se virtute tam illustrem reddidit, ut, mortuo Numeriano, anno Christi ducentesimo octogesimo quarto, milites, qui eo tempore sibi omnia arrogârunt, præteritis aliis nobili loco ortis, eum imperatorem eligerent. Hoc honore diu potitus non erat, quum certior factus est, Ægyptios, præfectis suis occisis, velle jugum Romanum excutere, seque in libertatem antiquam vindicare. Alexandriam confestim petivit, captaque urbe, militibus suis imperavit ut gladios ne prius in vaginas recondere, quam sanguis occisorum ad genua equorum pertigisset. Ita evenit, ut, quum ipsius equus titubasset, ejus genua sanguine cadaveris tingerentur; quo viso, milites a cæde desistere jussit.

- I. *Ut miles gregarius stipendia meruit*. But when the expression is general, when the particular capacity in which one serves is not specified, as, "To serve as a soldier," or "to serve in the army," the Lat. is simply *Stipendia merere*. 2. *Brevi*—"Shortly, in a short time." *Breviter*—"Shortly, briefly, in a few words." 3. *Priusquam*. "Till," being equivalent to "before" in sentences like this with a negative in the principal clause, is very well made by *priusquam*. He would not come to an engagement till he should be joined by the Quæstor—*Noluit proelium prius committere quam sibi Quæstor sese junxisset*. He did not do this till after he was bidden—*Hoc non fecit nisi postquam jussus est*. He maintained the fight till the bridge was cut down—*Pugnam sustinuit quoad (up to the time that) pons rescissus est*. Carry my bones with you till you reduce that country—*Ossa mea tecum porta quoad (up to the time that) eam regionem subegeris*. After verbs of "waiting," "till" is made by *dum*. Till then—*Ad id tempus*. Till now—*Ad hoc tempus*.

## CXXXVIII.

In eo bello quod Sociale appellatum est, Marius tardus et cautus fuit, ne dicam ignavus et timidus. Hostes repulsos, atque in vineas vicinas actos, non secutus est, sed satis habuit dicere eos non ita fugere ut evaderent, cito enim in Syllam incasuros esse, qui cum iis agere sciret. Se in castris pleurumque continuuit, quæ commode in alto colle sita erant, et vix unquam ex iis allici potuit, etsi hostis in eum quotidie insultabat. Plutarchus narrat, Pompædium Silonem, hostium imperatorem, quum ad munitiones ivisset, exclamasse; "Si, Mari,

magnus es dux, cur in planitiem non descendis ut mecum pugnes?" Marius a proposito suo advocari non potuit; et hoc tantum respondit, "Si tu, Pompædi, qui ita loqueris, is es quem te esse simulas, cur non potes me in proelium compellere."

1. *In eo bello quod*—LXXIV. 1. 2. *Satis habuit dicere*—"He contented himself, or he was content (*contented*) with saying." He was content (*contented*) or he contented himself with a triumph—*Triumpho contentus fuit*; *contentus* being used to govern a *subst.*, but not a *verb.* 3. *Qui cum iis agere sciret*—Who knew to deal with them; *quomodo cum iis ageret* would mean "how he was dealing with them," and *quomodo cum iis acturus esset*—"how he was likely or intending to deal with them." You know how to conquer, but you do not know how to improve a victory—*Scis vincere, sed nescis victoria uti.* Compare *Nescit arare* under LXXIV. "How"="from what quarter" is made by *unde*, as, Tell me how you know—*Dic mihi unde (whence) scias*; neither *quomodo*—"in what manner," nor *quam*—"to what extent" would give the proper meaning here. 4. *Quum ivisset*—§ 43, b. 5. *Advocari non potuit*—LXXI. 2. For that, this, purpose—*Ad eam, hanc rem.* On purpose—*De industria.* 6. *Quem te esse simulas*—"Whom you pretend to be;" the *rel.* cannot be suppressed as in Eng.

## CXXXIX.

Marius, cui belli Marsici administratio credita erat, rem diu ita gessit quasi eum gloriæ amorem, quo insignis quondam fuerat, amisisset, vel quasi timeret ne ab hostibus irretiretur. Tandem vel pudore victus, vel ratus opportuniorem agendi occasionem quam antea unquam oblata esset jam præbitam sibi esse, exiit castris quæ in colle fuisse sita vobis jam dictum est; copiasque in planitiem ductas jussit ostendere hostibus, qui configere tam vehementer cuperent, Romanos nondum oblitos esse pugnare et vincere. Milites tamen spem ejus fefellerunt, scriptor enim, cui penitus credi potest, confirmat, eos, primo impetu repulsos, armis abjectis, turpiter fugisse. Hostibus tamen ea animi præsentia non fuit ut eos insequerentur, sed confestim in castra sua redierunt, et Marius hisce verbis suos allocutus esse dicitur. "Vix scio utrum vestra an hostium ignavia major sit; nec vos eorum ora, nec ii vestra terga intueri potuerunt. Fortes profecto sitis necesse est, qui fugientes hostem terrueritis." Marius paulo post magistratu sese abdicavit, et Marsi gloriati sunt fortissimum ducem omnium quos Roma haberet virtuti suæ cessisse.

1. *Rem*—"The matter, the business, *i.e.*, the operations connected with the war." 2. *Amisisset, timeret*—the "losing" being pluperf., but the "fearing" imperf. or continuing then while "he conducted." 3. *Oblitos esse pugnare*—CXXXVIII. 3. 4. *Spem*—XCIV. 1. 5. *Ea præsentia animi ut*—"That presence of mind that." 6. *Hisce*

*verbis suos allocutus esse.* He addressed himself to me—*Me allocutus est.* 7. *Qui terrueritis*—"Who terrified, in as much as you terrified;" *qui* assigning the reason. 8. *Gloriati sunt*, or *jactarunt*. He boasted that he knew—*Gloriatus est se scire*, or *jactavit se scire*. You boast of your riches—*De divitiis tuis te jactas*, or *De divitiis tuis gloriaris*; *jacto* being a transitive verb and requiring a case to govern, lit. "you boast yourself;" so, "I boast of my authority"—*Me jacto* (I boast myself) *de auctoritate mea*.

## CXL.

Meritum Furii Camilli, præsertim postquam Romam urbem a Gallis liberavit, toti populo tantum visum est, ut honores amplissimos acciperet, atque alter Romulus appellaretur. Manlius Capitolinus ferre non potuit hanc laudem ei tribui cujus facta non tam illustria quam sua esse putabat, atque ita locutus esse dicitur; "Ego qui Capitolium servavi et nomine fruor quod ostendit quam grati Romani esse debeant, non possum non putare dignum me esse qui præmiorum, quæ Romani profundunt, particeps sim." Invidiâ igitur commotus Camillus in suspicionem adducere conatus est; dixitque pecuniam quam populus ad civitatem a Gallis redimendam contulisset, quæ autem data iis non esset, a civibus quibusdam quos nominare posset occupatam esse; quæ, si recuperari posset, non necessarium fore tam multa vectigalia plebi imponere. Verba hæc vix ediderat quum tantus coortus est tumultus, ut, ad eum sedandum, dictatore opus esset.

1. *Non tam illustria quam sua esse putabat*—"He did not think were so illustrious as (he thought that) his own (were)." 2. *Alter Romulus*—A second, another Romulus—*alter* being preferable to *secundus* here.

## CXLI.

Quam aversi a rhetorica antiqui Lacedæmonii fuerint, multis exemplis ostendi posset. Ne longus sim, hæc sufficiant. Inter bellum Peloponnesiacum, ad Tissaphernem, satrapen Persicum, missus est Spartanus qui conaretur ei persuadere ut societati Atheniensium societatem Lacedæmoniorum anteponeret. Quam paucissimis verbis locutus est; quumque legatorum Atheniensium eloquentiam audivisset, duas lineas duxit, unam rectam, alteram curvam, sed utramque in eodem puncto desinentem, et satrapæ dixit, "Elige." Ducentis ante annis, incolæ unius ex insulis in mari Ægæo fame laborantes, auxilium petierunt a Lacedæmoniis, qui eorum legato ita responderunt; "Pars posterior orationis tuæ intelligi non potest; et partem priorem jam obliti sumus." Secundus igitur legatus mittendus fuit, qui Lacedæmoniis saccum frumentarium inanem ostendit; quo facto, commea-

tum insulæ suppeditare confestim statuerunt, sed legato, quum dixisset necessarium esse saccum impleri, suaserunt ne verbis inutilibus alio tempore uteretur.

1. *Aversi a*—"Averse to," lit. "Averse from." 2. *Exemplis*. For example—*Verbi causa*, or *exempli gratia*. Atticus, for example, had refused to be enrolled a citizen of Athens—*Verbi causa, Atticus in civitatem Atheniensium adscisci recusaverat*. 3. *Anteponeret*. Compare this expression with those formerly given on *Malo* and *Præfero*. 4. *Unam rectam, alteram curvam*; without any word for "and," or, if any word is to be used, it must be *autem*. 5. *In eodem puncto desinentem*. This war terminated in the destruction of Corinth—*Hoc bellum in excidio Corinthi* (or *eversione*—by the overthrow) *terminatum est*. The road ended in a marsh—*Via in paludem destitit*, i.e., the road (going into) the marsh ended. This matter terminated (ended) successfully—*Hæc res felicem exitum habuit*. 6. *Antè, antea*; *ante hoc* is never used, but of course *ante hoc tempus* is correct. So, "after this or that"—*Post, postea, or posthac*, but never *post hoc*. 7. *Auxilium petierunt*. They had recourse to stratagem—*Ad dolum confugerunt*. 8. *Posterior, prior*—§ 15. 9. *Secundus*—CXL. 10. *Legato*, being the principal word, is as usual transferred from the subordinate to the principal clause, the pronoun taking its place.

### CXLII.

Hercules, quum, ex Hispania rediens, per Italiam transiret, hospitio exceptus est ab Evandro, qui, quum comperisset eum filium Jovis esse, et res ejus gestas cum magnitudine generis congruere, divinos ei honores primus habere constituit, et, extractâ ei arâ, taurum coram eo immolavit, dicens se meminisse dictum sibi a matre suâ hoc olim faciendum fore. Hercules respondit, Carmentam, cujus dicta omnia vera esse invenirentur, hoc non semel prædixisse, seque omen libenter accipere. Adjecit se, quum a rege interficiendo, qui multos greges suos carne humanâ paverit, venisset, sibi gratulari quod in hominem tam benignum et generosum incidisset.

1. *Hospitio exceptus est*—Was hospitably received, or got a hospitable reception. He gave him a hospitable reception—*Eum hospitio excepit*. To show hospitality to one—*Hospitium alicui præbere*. 2. *Congruere* is followed also by *ad* or *dat.*, in with acc. 3. *Immolavit*. He offered sacrifices—*Hostias immolavit*, or *sacra fecit*, or *sacrificavit*. He sacrificed all private resentment to the public good—*Privatas omnes inimicitias bono publico condonavit* (or *remisit*). To offer human sacrifices—*Homines immolare*. 4. *Invenirentur*—"Were being found," the prophecies being in course of fulfilment; the subj. attributes the sentiment to Hercules; the indic. would make the historian say that they were found to be true. 5. *Prædixisse*—*pluperf.*; *accipere*—*imperf.*

### CXLIII.

Mauricius, fraudulentus ambitiosusque princeps, religionis et vinculorum sanguinis negligens, possessiones patruelis sui,



Saxonie Electoris, occupaverat, per speciem prohibendi quominus in peregrini potestatem venirent. Quod quum cognitum esset, foederati Germanie principes, inter quos Elector tum erat, ei permiserunt ut copias suas contra proditorem duceret; et vix abierat, quum cæteri principes discesserunt. Infirmitatem suam tum sensere maximaque consternatione correpti sunt. Opportunior hæc occasio fuit quam quæ a Carolo, Archiduce Austriæ, omitteretur. In aciem mediâ hieme prodiit, et compluribus potitus est urbibus, quarum incolas damnavit ut graves multas penderent, et misericordiam flexis genibus implorarent.

1. *Negligens* with the gen. signifies "regardless, neglectful, heedless of," and comes under the rule "Verbal adjs. and such as signify an affection of the mind," &c.; but with the acc. it is used in the regular sense of *negligo*—"neglecting." Compare *Patiens*; *Patiens frigoris*—Capable of bearing cold; but *Patiens frigus*—bearing cold. So, *Amans patriæ*—A lover of his country; *Amans patriam*—Loving his country. The participle, regularly used, denotes a single act at any time; but, when it becomes a participial or adj. noun, it denotes a disposition or habit. *Appetens laudem*—Seeking praise; *Appetens laudis*—Habitually seeking, greedy of, praise. 2. *Quod quum cognitum esset*, a very common form of expression with Cæsar—L. 1. 3. *Quam quæ omitteretur*; the pass. form of the verb obviates the disagreeable combination *quam quam omitteret*; but it might be *quam ut eam omitteret*, although this is not so elegant. 4. *Mediâ hieme*—"In the middle or depth of winter." 5. *Damno*. To condemn one to death—*Aliquem capitis damnare*. He condemned (i.e., disapproved of) the action of his countrymen—*Factum civium suorum improbat*.

#### CXLIV.

Nineve urbs magnitudine, divitiis, luxuriâque diu insignis fuerat. Quo tempore condita sit, pro certo notum non est; sed dubitari non potest quin antiquissima fuerit. Quo tempore Jonas vates ad eam missus est, anno mundi ter millesimo centesimo quadragesimo tertio, octingentis sexaginta uno annis ante Christum, in ea fuerunt amplius centum et viginti millia infantes, quam credere licet circiter decimam partem omnium incolarum fuisse. Jonæ datum est negotium ut Ninevitis declararet, eos, nisi resipissent, intra quadraginta dies deletum iri; qui nuncius regem totumque populum tam graviter movit, ut jejuniū indicere, Deumque precarentur ut calamitas averteretur. Preces eorum sunt auditæ, ubique parsum aliquamdiu est, quoad totius gentis scelus immane iterum factum est.

1. *Quo tempore*. *Quo* is here the indef. interrog. In the beginning of the following sentence it is the rel. 2. *Vates*—"A poet," hence "a prophet," because prophecies were usually delivered in verse. 3. *Resipiscere*. *Pœnitet* will not do, because there is no genitive here.

The Ninevites repented—*Ninevites resipuerunt*. But, The Ninevites repented of their crimes—*Ninevitas scelerum suorum poenituit*. 4. *Credere licet*, or *credi licet*, or *credere possumus*. 5. *Jonæ datum est negotium*, or *Jonæ mandatum est*, or *Jonas legatus est*. 6. *Indicere jejunium*. They proclaimed him king—*Eum regem renuntiaverunt*. To proclaim, make a proclamation, or issue an edict—*Edicere, edictum edere*. He published a proclamation, declaring that life and liberty would be granted to them—*Edixit vitam libertatemque iis concessum iri*. 7. *Ut calamitas averteretur*, or *ne calamitas accideret*.

## CXLV.

Richardus Tertius, regni sui initio, Episcopum Eliensem, quem sibi inimicum esse audivit, comprehendendum atque in carcerem conjiciendum curavit. Dux Buckinghamiæ, cui senis custodia credita est, eum ad castellum Brechinia inexpugnabile in Valliam Australem misit, sed eum adeo non aspere tractavit, ut ei, quantum fieri poterat, indulgeret, et sæpe irèt ut de reipublicæ statu cum eo loqueretur, quasi vetus amicus esset. Hunc sermonem Episcopus nequaquam petivit; sed quo cautius se gessit, eo cupidior esse Buckinghamius visus est audiendi quam sententiam variis de rebus haberet, eique confirmavit neminem partem ullam eorum quæ ita secretò dicerentur unquam sciturum esse.

1. *Regni sui initio* is better than *regno ineunte*; but if we are speaking of a year or of the seasons, the latter form is preferred, as, *Ineunte vere, ineunte anno*. 2. *Eliensem*. In speaking of the Bishop or Archbishop of a place, the name of the place is made adjectively, as, The Bishop of London—*Episcopus Londinensis*. The Archbishop of York—*Archiepiscopus Eboracensis*. 3. *Cui senis custodia credita est*, or *commissa est*; or *cujus custodiæ senex commissus est*. 4. *Adeo non*—XXI. 6. 5. *Poterat*—"It was actually possible." 6. *Reipublicæ*, sing.—LVI. 1. 7. *Ut cum eo loqueretur*, or *ad loquendum cum eo*; but it would be improper to write *ad cum eo loquendum*, placing the two prepositions beside each other. But if the English were, "He went to talk familiarly with him," then we may say, *Ivit ad familiariter cum eo loquendum*, because *familiariter* separates *ad* from *cum*. 8. *Nequaquam*—XXI. 6. 9. *Quò cautius, eo cupidior*—§ 63. 10. *Sententiam de*. When we meet with "opinion of," we must consider whether "of" be equivalent to "concerning," or whether it is merely the sign of the genitive. I have a high opinion of him—*Magnam de eo opinionem habeo*. I have a high opinion of his bravery—*Magnam ejus virtutis opinionem habeo*. I have formed a high opinion of his bravery—*Magnam de ejus virtute opinionem concepi*. He entertained a high opinion of himself—*Magnam sui opinionem habuit*. *De*, however, may be always used with propriety. In such a sentence as the last *opinio* is the only proper word. 11. *Secretò*—"Secretly, in secret, apart, by one's self." *Clam*—"Secretly, without the knowledge of others." He was secretly conveyed away to Argos—*Argos clam asportatus est*.

## CXLVI.

Bibulus tribunus conatus est populo persuadere Marcellum

idoneum non esse qui exercitibus Romanis præsset. Affirmavit duces patricos cunctando causæ publicæ nocuisse, et Hannibalem decem annos in Italia manere non potuisse, si alii peritiores promptioresque contra eum missi essent. "Romani," inquit, "vos qui Marcellum copiarum vestrarum imperatorem fecistis, forsitan jam videtis quam indigno homini commissæ sint; moneoque ne continuatis ei munus quo eum rectè fungi non posse manifestum est." Qui Marcello favebant dixerunt; "De eo judicate ut Hannibal ipse judicat. Ducum nostrorum nemo est quem Carthaginiensis tantopere metuat; alius nemo est quem non in certamen perdere velit."

1. *Marcellum copiarum imperatorem, or Marcellum copiis præfecistis.* 2. *Quam indigno*—"To how unworthy a person." *Cui indigno*—"To what unworthy." 3. *Continuare*—XL. 6. 4. *Judicat*—"Judges"—XCV. 1. 5. *Metuat and velit*—the predicate being in rel. clause.

#### CXLVII.

VIII. Kal. Octobr., anno millesimo ducentesimo septimo, Garisenda, a Bulgaro Bologniâ expulsus, in Galliam fugit; brevique, sive fraude, sive mercatura, sive regis liberalitate, tam dives factus est ut non solum magnificentissimè ibi viveret, sed etiam domum ad suam uxorem pecuniam ingentem ad turrim amplam validamque ædificandam mitteret. Ejus uxor, cujus nomen historici nonnulli cum mariti nomine confundunt, ad eum scripsit, se imperio ejus paruisse, et pecuniâ quæ sibi commissâ esset ita usam esse, ut, quum permissum ei esset ut rediret, tutus ab omni periculo futurus esset. Mortuo Bulgaro, Garisenda revocatus expectavit ut ad arcem rediret; sed quum pervenisset nec novum ullum ædificium vidisset, secum dubitare coepit utrum uxor sua esset mentita, an turris ab inimicis suis diruta esset. Tandem uxor, manu ejus prehensâ, eum in aream post domum duxit quò congregata erant amplius tria millia civium robustorum, qui ei de reditu gratulati (sunt) et res ei prosperas precati sunt. "Hæc," inquit matrona, "turrium omnium quas habere potes optima est. Fortes hos homines tuâ tibi pecuniâ conciliavi; tuumque est eorum operâ uti. Si ego vir fuisset, eorum auxilio injuriam tibi illatam multo ante ultâ essem; jam ipse ulciscere." Garisenda ejus consilium secutus est, et inimicos suos invicem expulit.

1. *Sive*—§ 57, b. 2. *Factus est, not evasit*, because he did not "become rich" all at once. 3. *Imperio paruisse*. Their request was complied with—*Postulationi eorum concessum est*—CXXXIII. 4. 4. *Tutus ab*—XXXIII. 5. 5. *Futurus esset*—"He would be." *Ut esset*—"That he was." 6. *Quò*, not *ubi*, there being motion to, or into implied.

7. *Tuum est*—"It is for you, it is your part or duty." 8. *Multò antè*. This took place many years ago—*Hoc multis abhinc annis factum est*. 9. *Invicem*—"In turn." They used the book *by turns*—*Libro invicem usi sunt*. It came to his *turn* to speak—*Ventum ad eum est ut loqueretur*.

## CXLVIII.

Antiochenses, onerati vectigalibus quæ justo majora esse existimabant, in subitam seditionem exarserunt; quumque præfectum in quem iram effunderent non invenissent, rabiem converterunt in Theodosii imperatoris et uxoris ejus Flacillæ statuas, quas deturbatas confregerunt. Simul ac tumultus cessavit coeperuntque de eo quod fecerant cogitare, furori, qui ad tempus effrenatus fuerat, dolor et poenæ timor successerunt. Flavianus, Episcopus Antiochensis, quum factum civium suorum improbaret, tamen imperatorem adire et conari, si fieri posset, eum placare statuit. Constantinopolim igitur mediâ hieme profectus est, domi relicta unica sorore quæ morbo ancipiti laborabat. Venerabilis senex, quum ad imperatoris (ædes) pervenisset, in lacrymas effusus dixit supplicium quod cives ipsi de se sumpsissent, esse omnium quæ accidere iis potuissent gravissimum, quippe qui in optimum imperatorum ingratos sese præbuisent; se autem non ideo venisse ut eos excusaret, hoc enim neminem esse tentaturum, sed ut peteret ut exemplum Ejus imitaretur qui omnibus imperitet quemque, licet quotidie offensum, misericordiâ uti delectet.

1. *Converterunt in*—"Turned against or upon." 2. *Statua*—"A statue, standing image, a likeness (sculptured)." *Simulacrum*—"A likeness, image, or picture." 3. *Ad imperatoris*—"To the emperor's." This construction is not uncommon in Lat., when there is no ambiguity as to the word to be supplied; thus: *Ivit ad Vestæ*—"He went to the temple of Vesta;" understand *ædem* or *templum*. In English the idiom is very common, as, He went to the bookseller's, &c. 4. *Ipsi de se sumpsissent*—"They themselves (not others) had inflicted on themselves (not on others)." A great loss was inflicted on him—*Magnum detrimentum ei illatum est*. To inflict capital punishment—*Capitis poenam sumere*. 5. *Se autem non ideo venisse ut*—"And that he had not come for that cause that;" obs. *autem* and "was." 6. "For this no one would attempt." Had this been a parenthesis of the historian's, the acc. and inf. would not have been used. As it stands it is a parenthetic assertion of the Bishop's. 7. *Licet*.—Obs. its use with participle.

## CXLIX.

Perseus, ut est in fabulis, a Minerva missus est ad interimendam Medusam, quæ sola Gorgonum mortalis fuit. Gor-

gonēs filiæ fuerunt Phorcynis nymphæque Cethus. Hæc Medusa multas calamitates gentibus Iberiæ intulerat; et capilli ejus ab eadem Minerva in angues mutati, omnes qui eam aspexerunt in lapides verterunt. Ad hoc monstrum delendum, Perseus a Mercurio alas, a Plutone galeam, et a Minerva clypeum accepit. Ita instructus, Græas, sorores Medusæ ex altero parente, adiit quæ unum tantum oculum inter se habuerunt, quo invicem usæ sunt. Hunc tam stultæ fuerunt ut ei commodarent; acceptumque is noluit prius reddere quam certiores eum fecerunt ubi Medusa habitaret. Perseus quam celerrimè ad locum ivit; et Medusæ dormientis inventæ caput uno ictu abscidit. Caput datum est Minervæ quæ id in Ægida suam inseruit.

1. *Cethus*, after the Greek form. 2. *Mutati*. There is a change in the names—*Est commutatio nominum*. They were ashamed of the change in their condition—*Eos mutata conditionis puduit*. Fortune changed—*Fortuna mutata est*. Changes of fortune—*Fortunæ vicissitudines*. 3. *Sorores ex altero parente*. The ship was half-loaded with coals—*Navis dimidiâ parte onerata fuit carbonibus*. He gave a half to each—*Dimidium utrique dedit*. The piece of wood was 2½ feet broad—*Lignum duos pedes et semissem latum fuit*. The Centaur was half man, half beast—*Centaurus dimidiâ (ex) parte homo, dimidiâ (ex) parte bestia fuit*. 4. *Commodo*—"To lend," expecting to get back the identical thing lent, as, He lent me his book—*Mihi librum suum commodavit*. *Dare rem mutuam*, or the adv. *mutuò*, is "to lend," when you don't expect to get the same (very) thing back, but a thing of the same value, as, He lent me money—*Mihi pecuniam mutuam dedit*. He gave me the loan of his book—*Mihi librum suum utendum dedit*. 5. *Priusquam*—CXXXVII. 3. 6. *Uno ictu*—§ 1.

## CL.

Foedere Madritensi, quod vocatur, Franciscus Galliæ rex, qui in carcere in Hispania erat, in libertatem est restitutus conditionibus quas, quamvis duræ essent, haud ita verisimile est eum adepturum fuisse, nisi Angliæ rex deprecatus esset. Statim ut dimissus est, equum omnium qui comparari poterunt velocissimum conscendit, equitavitque ea festinatione quæ tanti principis gravitatem parum decebat, exclamans, quasi insanus esset, "Rex sum." Quid sibi his verbis voluerit non omnino convenit, quum historici alii putent eum aliud nihil in animo habuisse nisi significare se dignitatem, quæ regis esset, jam recuperasse; sed alii affirmant eum, jam liberum, non existimasse se conditionibus obstringi quibus se invitò subjecerit. Qui ex eventu judicant creduntque hanc fuisse declarationem quid factururus esset, in posteriore sententia procul dubio erunt; certum enim est Franciscum conditionibus adeo non paruisse ut eas turpissimè violaret.

1. *Quod vocatur*—LXXIV. 1. 2. *Restitutus est*. Either *Aliquem in libertatem restituere*, or *Alicui libertatem restituere*. 3. *Quamvis* means properly not "although," but "to whatever extent," as, *However ignorant they be, they ought to know this—Quamvis ignari sint, hoc scire debent*. How great soever the forces be, they may be conquered—*Quamvis magnæ copiæ sint, vinci possunt*. *Quæ, quamvis duræ essent*—"Which, however hard they were." 4. *Ita verisimile*. This use of *ita* has formerly been remarked. In the present case, "It is not very likely," i. e. "there is little or no likelihood." 5. *Nisi*—§ 62. 6. *Ea festinatione quæ parum decebat*—"With that haste which little became." It ill became him—*Eum minime decebat*. *Parum* means "little, hardly any or to any extent." *Paulum*—"A little, not very much." *Parum frumenti*—"Little, scarcely any, corn." *Paulum frumenti*—"A little corn." I care little whether I am praised or blamed—*Parum curo utrum lauder an reprehendar*. He is a little wiser—*Est paulo sapientior*. He is little wiser—*Haud multo sapientior est*, the abl. of *excess* being required in this sentence with the comparative, *parum* cannot be used in it; so, Little less—*Haud multo minus*. 7. *Quid sibi voluerit*. *Quid vis*—"What do you wish for?" But, *Quid tibi vis*—"What do you mean?" The word does not mean this—*Verbum hoc non significat*. 8. *Conditionibus se subicere*—"To submit to conditions." The Jews submitted to the Chaldeans—*Judei sese Chaldeis submittebant*.

## CLI.

In diversis Ægypti partibus variæ cæremoniæ valebant, et præsertim varia animalia diis consecrabantur; at hæc diversitas tranquillitatem publicam non turbasse videtur, quamdiu regio a principibus suis gubernabatur. Quum tamen victores leges novas invexissent, odium apparere coepit, et factiones quæ in oppidis exortæ, diræ fuerunt. Doctus quidam scriptor lectoribus suis confirmat historiam non nisi unum hujusmodi exemplum præbere; sed fieri non potest ut accurate investigaverit, tales enim tumultus complures memoriæ proditi sunt, quorum unusinde ortus est quod Romanus felem Ægyptiam interfecerat, atque ita in mores constitutos peccaverat. Nihil Ægyptiis plus displicere potuisset; et semper vitæ discrimen libenter adierunt ut sese ulciscerentur.

1. *Quamdiu*—"As long as, while." The sense would be very considerably altered by introducing *tamdiu*, giving us some such meaning as this—"The public tranquillity does not seem to have been disturbed for so long a period as the country was ruled by its own princes." The man staid as long as the woman—*Vir tamdiu quamdiu femina mansit*. But, I staid as long as (i. e. while) he was speaking—*Ego mansi quamdiu is loquebatur*. 2. *Doctus*. *Doctus Latinam linguam*—" (One) who has been taught the Latin tongue," but may perhaps never have understood it, or may have forgotten it. *Doctus Latinæ linguæ*—"One who is learned or skilled in the Latin tongue, a good Latin scholar." Compare CXLIII. 1. He is a good scholar (i. e. learned)—*Doctus est*. He is a very good scholar—*Doctissimus est*. But if "good scholar" meant something like "well-behaved scho-

lar," the Lat. would be *Bonus, optimus, discipulus est*. 3. *Non nisi unum*, stronger than *unum tantum*. 4. *Fieri non potest ut investigaverit*. As a general rule, *possum* is followed by the pres. inf., as, I can do it—*Facere possum*. I could have done it if I had been assisted—*Facere potuissem si adjutus essem*. It is however found with the perf. inf., but the cases are peculiar. I cannot have said so—*Non possum ita dixisse*, better *Fieri non potest ut ita dixerim*. Cicero cannot have used these words—*Cicero his verbis usus esse non potest*, better *Fieri non potest ut Cicero his verbis usus sit*. I might have seen him if I had wished—*Eum videre potuissem si voluissem*. This might not have been known in Livy's time—*Fieri potuisset ut hoc Livii tempore ignotum esset*. No one could have answered better—*Nemo melius respondere potuisset*. Cæsar says that the war might have been finished that day had his men pursued the enemy—*Cæsar dicit bellum eo die confici potuisse si sui hostem secuti essent*. 5. *Inde ortus est quod*—"Arose from the circumstance that (because)," *inde* being equivalent to *ex eo*. This occasioned fear—*Hoc timorem attulit*. He occasioned trouble to me—*Mihi molestiam creavit*. This has occasioned us great trouble—*Hoc magnum nobis laborem attulit*. They themselves occasioned this cruelty—*Ipsi hujus crudelitatis fuerunt causa*. This has occasioned a difficulty to the critics—*Hoc difficultatem criticis creavit*. I shall not be the occasion of your being detained—*Ego non committam ut tu detinearis*. I was not the occasion of his not being praised—*Per me non stetit quominus laudaretur*.—LXIII. 6. *In mores peccare*. In prosodiam peccat—"He commits errors in prosody," lit. "he sins against prosody." 7. *Vitæ discrimen adierunt*. The plu. of *vita* is not used in such a case as this; if used, it would imply that each had more lives than one. He spared their lives—*Eorum vitæ pepercit*. The plu. must, however, be used in the following case, where "lives" has a different meaning:—He wrote the lives of the Roman generals—*Vitas Romanorum ducum scripsit*. Plutarch, the biographer—*Plutarchus, qui vitas scripsit*. A sentence on our lives—*Judicium de nostro capite*. They rescued them at the risk of their own lives—*Cum vitæ suæ periculo eos eriperunt*, or *vitæ suæ periculo adeundo eos eriperunt*, or *vitâ suâ in periculum (discrimen) adductâ eos eriperunt*. To run a risk—*Adire periculum*, or *in periculum incurrere*.

## CLII.

Megara, quæ a Creonte condita, atque ab una ex ejus filiabus appellata est, a pessimis Græcorum incolebatur; oraculumque Apollinis declaraverat gentem magis profligatam in nulla totius terrarum orbis parte inveniri posse. Fieri tamen potest ut hæc fuerit calumnia ab Atheniensibus excogitata, quos certum est odium in Megarenses ultra exercuisse quam unquam ante notum fuerat inter homines eâdem linguâ loquentes. Nulla temporis longinquitas hæc inimicitias imminuere potuit, quæ primo excitatæ sunt quum Megarensibus jugum Atheniense excutere libertatemque suam vindicare visum est. Regio, quam tenebant, parva fuit, sed tam potentes tandem evaserunt, ut, semel emancipati, postea nun-

quam in priorem servitutem redigi possent. Quicumque Athenis creditores suos fraudare volebat vel cædem aut aliud ullum scelus perpetraverat, Megaram fugit; et verisimile videtur vitia tot fugitivorum cum eorum defensoribus esse communicata. Megaræ natus est Euclides.

1. *Oraculum.* It had been declared by the oracle—*Oraculo declaratum erat*; *a* or *ab* is not to be used with *oraculo*, as it is not an *agent*. Socrates was judged the wisest by the oracle—*Socrates oraculo sapientissimus judicatus est.* 2. *Fieri potest, &c.*—CLII. 4. 3. *Certum est.* The Eng. might sometimes lead a person to suppose that "it is certain," and similar expressions are used parenthetically, when such is not the case. The verbs *Credo* and *Scio* are sometimes parenthetic, sometimes not; thus, *This, I suppose, is the way—Hæc, credo, est via.* *I suppose this is the way—Credo hanc esse viam.* In the former sentence we begin as if certain of the way, but before proceeding far a doubt is expressed, or it is as if we spoke boldly at first, and then corrected, or attempted to correct, ourselves; but in the latter, the doubt or uncertainty is expressed in the beginning. You did not, *I believe*, assist me in this matter—*Mihi, credo, in hac re non auxiliatus es.* This is an ode which *I believe* was written by Horace—*Hæc est ode quam ab Horatio scriptam esse credo*; as the rel. must be first in its clause, "*I believe*" looks somewhat like a parenthesis, but is not so in reality. This is an ode which *you know* was written by Horace—*Hæc est ode quam ab Horatio scriptam esse scitis.* This is an ode which, *as you know*, was written by Horace—*Hæc est ode quæ, ut scitis, ab Horatio scripta est.* The king, *as I believe*, is just—*Rex, ut credo, justus est*; with "*as*" thus inserted, the clause is always parenthetic. 4. *Lingua loquentes*, lit. "speaking in the language." To speak Latin—*Latine loqui*, or, *Latine lingua loqui.* To turn into Latin—*Latine vertere.* 5. *Postea nunquam.* Ever after—*Postea semper.*

### CLIII.

Petrus Florentinus principes civitatis in domum suam convocatos dicitur longa oratione allocutus esse, cujus hæc sunt partes præcipuæ. "Abhinc annis tribus nemo mihi persuadere potuisset tempus unquam venturum quo insoliti mores hominum se amicos meos esse simulantium facerent ut adversariis meis successum optarem. Tum putavi mihi agendum fore cum hominibus quorum ambitio inexplebilis non esset, quique, benignè tractati, animo grato agere scirent. Jam video quam graviter erraverim et quam ignarus fuerim quantum homines ab hominibus differant. Vos, qui maximas divitias habetis honoribusque amplissimis fruimini, his non contenti esse videmini, sed omnia commoda vestra pro nihilo habetis nisi vobis permittatur ut civibus vestris impunè noceatis. Credo, etsi me pudet dicere, in omni reliqua Italia non esse tot violentiæ injustitiæque exempla quot in hac una urbe



sunt. Ita loquor, non quod vobis insultare velim aut quod vos omnes æque accusabiles putem, sed quod duco meum esse vos monere ut desistatis." Dubium non est quin si diutius vixisset horum insolentiam coerciturus fuerit; sed historici Florentini commemorant eum, morbo corporis pressum animique ægritudine laborantem, paucis post diebus quam hæc oratio habita sit, mortuum esse.

1. *Tempus*. . . *quo*—"The time . . . that or at which." 2. *Hominum*—"People, persons, men." *Populus*—"A people, or the people as a body;" and *Populi*—"Peoples, nations." 3. *Agere scirent*—"Knew to act." *Quomodo agerent scirent* would mean "knew how they were acting," and *Quomodo acturi essent scirent*—"knew how they were likely or intending to act." 4. *Quantum homines ab hominibus differant*—"How much or to what a great extent men differ from men." There is no difference between this and that—*Nihil interest inter hoc et illud*. This differs little from that—*Hoc ab illo parum distat*. Historians differ so much from each other that, &c.—*Historici tantopere inter se discrepant ut, &c.* He acted differently from most other people—*Aliter ac plerique alii homines fecit*. He was of quite a different disposition—*In sententiâ longe aliâ fuit*. To terminate differences—*Discordias finire*. A difference (dispute) took place—*Controversia orta est*. There is a great difference between promising and performing—*Multum interest inter promittere et præstare*. There is a great difference between being poor and having nothing—*Multum interest inter esse pauperem et nihil habere, i.e.,* there is a great difference between that a man be poor and that he have nothing. Although in Eng. prepositions are often used to govern clauses, *Inter* is the only Lat. one that is used in this way. 5. *Tum putavi mihi agendum, &c.* This sentence contains his former sentiments indirectly narrated as much as if they were those of another person. 6. *Quot in hac urbe sunt*; without *sunt* expressed, *quot* would be in the acc. with *esse* understood and under the influence of *credo*; and then the meaning would be only "that he believed the crimes existed to that extent in the city, although perhaps it might not be the case;" as it is, no doubt is left as to their existence.—Compare LII. 10. 7. *Quod duco*. *Quia* is more common in this clause (§ 53). 8. *Ægritudo* is applied to the mind, *agrotatio* to the body.

## CLIV.

Veneti, quum inter eos studium partium flagraret, Nicolaum Soderinum sibi summum magistratum elegerunt, maximam habentes ejus integritatis opinionem, neque tamen reputantes eum indolis ferocis esse, et, si ab adversariis suis, quos multos habebat, irritatus esset, adduci posse ut ea faceret quæ civitati nocitura essent. Thomas, frater ejus, qui omnino alio ingenio fuit, quum ei gratulatum venisset, dixit munus quod suscepisset magni esse momenti, nec minus difficile quam honorificum; tempus esse dissensiones quæ civitatem tamdiu agitassent finire, earumque causas, si fieri posset, oblivione obrui; propectum eum ad hanc dignitatem esse propterea quod elec-

tores persuasum haberent eum nihil nisi utilitati publicæ consulturum; quam enim aliam posse esse causam cur is multitudini aliorum præferretur? Nicolaus fratri suo gratias agit promisitque se hæc consilia secuturum et privatas omnes inimicitias bono publico condonaturum (or remissurum).

1. *Studium partium*—"Zeal of parties." 2. *Quos multos habuit. Multos* is not a partitive here, as it is in the following sentence—He benefited his friends, *many of whom* (or, *of whom many*) were ungrateful—*Amicis, quorum multi ingrati fuerunt, profuit*. But, His friends, *of whom he had many*, were grateful—*Amici ejus, quos multos habuit, grati fuerunt* (§ 3). 3. *Omnino alio*—"Of quite a different, altogether another"—or, *longè alio*. 4. *Momenti*. There is no word for "one" required, when it is thus used to prevent the repetition of the subst. like "that," as, The house was *that* of the orator—*Domus fuit oratoris*. "Importance" is variously rendered according to its meaning in particular cases. When speaking of a *thing*, we use *momentum*, as, A thing of great importance—*Res magni momenti*. The most important truths—*Vera maximi momenti*. When persons are spoken of, *pretium* is generally used, but *momentum* also is found. He was overlooked, as if he had been of no importance (*worth, value*)—*Prætermisus est, quasi nullius pretii esset*. He seems not to have been ignorant of his own importance (consequence)—*Ipse quanti momenti esset haud videtur ignarus fuisse*. When "importance" signifies something like "influence," it is made by *auctoritas*, as, He was a man of great importance among them—*Vir fuit magnæ apud eos auctoritatis*. 6. *Honorificus*—"Honourable, bearing, imparting, or yielding honour." *Honestus*—"Honourable (in itself), fair, upright (as in conduct)." An honourable man—*Vir honestus*. He used honourable means—*Ratione honestâ usus est*. 6. *Tempus esse* is followed by the acc. with inf., the verb being pass. and the gerund therefore inadmissible without somewhat altering the form of the sentence. 7. *Hanc*, not *presentem, dignitatem*. 8. *Nihil nisi, &c.* He did nothing but consult his own interest—*Nihil nisi utilitati suæ consuluit*. But, He consulted nothing but his own interest—*Rei nulli nisi utilitati suæ consuluit*. He did nothing but laugh—*Nihil nisi risit*. I do nothing but trifle—*Nihil nisi ineptio*. Livy sometimes uses *præterquam* instead of *nisi*. 9. *Quam enim causam*, the direct interrog. in the indirect statement being acc. with inf. (§ 38, d). 10. *Gratias agere*—"To thank," but not necessarily implying that the person who does so entertains a sense of gratitude. *Habere gratias*—"To be grateful or thankful, to entertain gratitude." *Facere gratiam alicui*—"To pardon or excuse one." I pardon you for what you have said—*Tibi gratiam facio eorum quæ dixisti*.

## CLV.

Carolus Secundus, quum proelium cum Cromuello ad Vigorniam commisisset, victusque esset, speciem alienam induere atque a loco alio in alium vagari coactus est. Tandem navem conscendit quæ dimidiâ parte onerata est carbonibus quos magister vendere non potuerat, et huic viro, cujus fidelitati credi posse putabat, præmium magnum proposuit si se in Galliam

extemplo vexisset. Nautæ, qui forte tria quatuorve millia passuum eo tempore aberant, statim convocati sunt, quærentibusque quid factum esset quod tantam properationem necessariam redderet, dictum est mercatores quosdam qui a Vecte Insula modo venissent carbones reliquos emisse et velle navem eo ire simul atque æstus ventusque permetterent. Magistri uxor subitum mariti sui discessum primo æque mirata est, dixitque, "Cur, Jacobe, quum hic tamdiu manseris, me non præmonuisti quæ non semper parata esse possum tam celeriter migrare?" sed quum quis in nave esset deprehendisset, ad Carolum conversa, exclamavit, "Precor ut tua solius causa Deus nobis omnibus navigationem prosperam det."

1. *Speciem alienam induere.* The prophet went in *disguise* to reprove the king—*Vates, habitu mutato, ad regem objurgandum ivit.* 2. *Dimidiâ parte onerata*—CXLIX. 3. *Magister*—"Master" he had the *charge* of the vessel, but that does not necessarily imply that he was the *owner* (*dominus*) of it. "Master" in relation to "slave, or servant" is *herus*. The *servant* was a favourite with his *master*—*Servus graciosus apud herum suum fuit.* The dog follows his *master*—*Canis dominum sequitur.* He made himself *master* of the city—*Urbe potitus est.* He is his own *master*, *i.e.* he is free—*Est sui juris.* To be *master* of one's self—*Seipsum continere or reprimere.* 4. *Si vexisset*—"To convey," *lit.* "if he would convey." The Eng. inf. is very variously rendered into Lat. according as the sense requires; *obs.* "to render" below. 5. *Quærentibus . . . dictum est*—"To them enquiring . . . it was told." 6. *Qui modo venissent*—"Who had just come." The Eng. "just come" cannot be made by the part., the verb being intrans., and consequently deficient in that part. So intrans. verbs with Eng. pass. signs, as, "He is come, he was come, he is gone, &c.," being equivalent to "He has come, he had come he has gone, &c.," are in Lat. *Venit, venerat, abiit, &c.* 7. *Tuâ solius causâ*—§ 31.

## CLVI.

Quum Cæsar in Hispania esset, æmulus ejus Pompeius ex oriente quem vicerat rediit, et amplissimis honoribus Romæ exceptus est. Pompeio propositum primò fuit ut summam auctoritatem compararet nec tamen eam cupere videretur; sed cito persuasum habuit hoc effici non posse, et potestatem ullam quam sperare posset se esse adepturum, vi armisque constituendam conservandamque esse. Igitur, absente Cæsare, ratione omni usus est, sive honestâ, sive non, ut sibi popularitatem conciliaret. Cæsar, quum ex Hispania redisset, Crassum et Pompeium invenit acriter luctantes uter superior esset; atque ad consilia sua ambitiosa promovenda, auctor fuit ut, finitis discordiis, inirent unâ secum foedus quod nescit triumviratus appellari; et ita totam et senatûs et plebem futuram suam esse. In hac iniquissimâ

ac perniciosissimâ conjunctione, quæ sexaginta ante Christum annis facta est, Cæsar, Pompeius, et Crassus sese jurejurando obstrinxerunt se nihil nisi mutuo consensu facturos, et pro communi hoste habituros quicumque ulli ex suo numero restitisset. Dominatio Cæsaris ut triumviri cessavit quum in Galliam missus est; sed viam jam fecerat ad evertendam patriæ suæ libertatem.

1. *Exceptus est.* In expressions like this, as, "To receive hospitably, kindly," *excipio* is more commonly used than *accipio* or *recipio*. 2. *Propositum*—"Aim, or object"—XLIII. 7. *Primò*—"At first, originally." Delos was *originally* a floating island—*Delos primò fluctuans insula* exists. Paganism originated in this country—*In hac regione Paganismus originem habuit*. 3. *Nec tamen videretur*—"And yet not to seem." 4. *Absente Cæsare* is the abl. of *time*. "He was made consul in his absence," is ambiguous; if it means while the *person* himself was absent, it is *Consul factus est absens*; but if it means while *some other* was absent, *Consul, eo absente, factus est*. 5. *Et ita potestatem*, the acc. with inf., being a *statement* or *assertion* following the *proposal* made in the previous clause. 6. *Dominatio*—"Sway, rule." He *swayed* the sceptre over a brave people—*Regnavit in fortem populum*. The sceptre which he had long *swayed* (or *wielded*) was extorted from him—*Regnum quod diu administraverat ei extortum est*. 7. *Viam fecerat*—"Had paved the way." The road was paved with hard flint—*Via duro silice strata est*; "paved" being *metaphorical* in the former, and *literal* in the latter.

## CLVII.

Quum colonia Corinthia, quæ in Corcyram insulam deducta erat, parenti civitati honorem eum qui expectabatur et deberi existimabatur, tribuere recusasset, Corinthii, non reputantes quid ex temeritate sua consecuturum esset, sed viribus suis, quæ tum maximæ erant, freti, quod supplicium justum iis videbatur, sumere statuerunt. Hi, tamen, insulæ habitatores se ita tractari indignè ferentes, ratique Corinthios, qui in re parva se tam iniquos præbuissem, si iis non restitutum esset, majora postulatueros esse, in aciem contra eos cum omnibus, quas conscribere potuerunt, copiis prodierunt. Etsi primo certamine victores, cujus rei ratio facile reddi potest, tam stulti non fuerunt ut crederent se bellum solos gerere posse, sed auxilium petierunt ab Atheniensibus; qui quum se iis junxissent, Peloponnesiacum, quod dictum est, bellum exarsit.

1. *In Corcyram*, the acc., because *motion into* is implied, like "arrived in, at," &c. 2. *Deberi*—"To be due." He received the punishment *due* to his crime—*Poenas meritas accepit*. They study with *due* care—*Satis diligenter student*, or *Eâ, quâ par est, curâ student*. They treat the man with *due* honour—*Virum eo, quo par est, honore tractant*. In the last two examples "due" signifies something like "becoming, sufficient." Glory is *due* to him for his exploits—*Ei*

*gloria ob res ejus gestas debetur.* 3. *Quid consecuturum esset*—"What would be the consequence" (sing.) He declared what would be the consequences (plur.) of her son's coming (having come)—*Declaravit quæ consecutura ex eo essent quod filius ejus venisset*—CXXXV. 4. *Videbatur.* I conceive this to be just—*Hoc mihi justum videtur.* It can scarcely be conceived how great a slaughter there was—*Vix concipi potest quanta strages fuerit.* 5. *Etsi victores.* *Quum* or *dum* are not used without a finite verb:—thus, "While victorious, they were proud," must be *Quum victores essent* (or *dum victores erant*), *superbi fuerunt.* 6. *Cujus rei ratio*, &c.—LXXXI. 7. *Tam stulti*—LI. 8. *Bellum gerere*—"To carry on war" as a nation does; *bellum administrare*—"To carry on, or manage, war," as a general; but *gerere* is often applied to a general. 9. *Peloponnesiacum, quod dictum est, bellum.* These islands, as they called them, were lost—*Hæ insulæ, quas vocabant, amissæ sunt*—LXXIV.

## CLVIII.

Tacitus, qui ætate admodum provectus imperator invitatus est factus, non amplius paucos menses honore fruitus est; eique in urbe Tarso mortuo frater Florianus conatus est succedere. Militibus, tamen, qui eo tempore quidquid iis placebat fecerunt, visum est optabile ut vir bellicosior et venerabilior quæreretur; et quum aliquis Probum nominasset, omnes exclamarunt, "Probe Auguste, dii te servant." Senatores, sive contenti erant, sive non, hunc eligere coacti sunt, (militēs enim potentiores erant quam ut resisti iis posset;) atque ut verum dicam, omnium qui tum in exercitu Romano erant, hic maximè idoneus fuisse videtur. Aliquanto amplius sex annos, cum magno honore suo, nec minore civitatis commodo, imperavit; at, quæ est popularis gratiæ inconstantia, a parte exercitus interfectus est quam in siccandis paludibus adhibuerat, quem laborem sibi imponi non debuisse existimarent.

1. *Fruitus est*—"Enjoyed (after getting possession of)." *Potior* would not be the proper word here, as was formerly observed. 2. *Honore.* *Suo* is not to be inserted here; for, if it were, the meaning would be, that Tacitus did not enjoy *his own* honour, i.e. the honour he had before. *Honore* is sufficiently defined by its reference to *imperator factus est*. I was reflecting in my mind—*Animo cogitabam*; *meo* is not required. 3. *Mortuo.* *Mors ejus accidit* is not Latin. 4. *Ei frater successit.* When we begin the sentence with *ei*, no word is required for "his;" but, if we began with *frater*, the pronoun would have to be expressed. 5. *Optabile visum est ut.* It is *optabile*, not *visum est*, that takes *ut*. *Optabilis*, like many other adjs. derived from verbs, takes the syntax of *opto*, which is followed generally, not invariably, by *ut*. Were not this the case, it is likely that *optabile est* would take the acc. and inf., like *utile est*, *verisimile est*, *mirum est*, *æquum est*, *justum est*, &c. It is *desirable* that we should know—*Optabile est ut sciamus*. 6. *Et quum aliquis Probum nominasset*, or, not so good, *Probo nominato ab aliquo*: but *aliquo nominante Probum* will not do, for the meaning is not "while some one was naming," but, "when some one had named." 7. *Quam*

ut *tis*, or *quam quibus*, the rel. with *quam*, being often the most elegant form. 8. *Atque ut*. *Atque* is agreeably used before a vowel. 9. *Imperavit*. We must not use the verb *regno* here, because, after the expulsion of the kings, the Romans entertained the greatest aversion to the words *Rex*, *regno*, and never used them or their cognates, with the exception of *Rego*, which they applied as a general word, and *Interregnum*, for which they had not a suitable substitute. In the reign of Augustus—*Augusto imperante*. 10. *Honore suo . . . civitatis commodo*—XXXIX. 3. 11. *Quæ est*. When “such” is thus introduced in a parenthetical way, and not followed by “that,” it is made by the rel., as, You, *such* is your love for me, incurred danger to save me—*Tu, qui est tuus in me amor, in periculum incurristi ut me servares*. But, *Such* is your love for me, *that* you incur danger to save me—*Tantus est* (or *is est*) *tuus in me amor, ut incurras in periculum ut me serves*. Terentius Varro, *such* was his rashness, engaged with Hannibal in a disadvantageous situation—*Terentius Varro, quæ temeritate erat, cum Hannibale loco iniquo conflixit* (§ 33).

## CLIX.

*Siqua fides haberi iis potest quæ de Xanthiis antiquis accepimus, historia eorum mira videatur necesse est; sed tam commista est cum fabulis, quarum specimen proferemus, ut vix scias quid verum aut credibile sit habendum, quidque ut omnino falsum rejiciendum. Diu graviterque ab apro vexati, qui eorum pecora frugesque absumpsit, Bellerophontem arcessiverunt, qui, interfecto animali, quum præmium promissum non accepisset, Neptunum precatus est, ut eorum agri salsum rorem exhalarent sterilesque fierent. Mulieribus, quum eum tandem exorassent ut iterum precaretur Neptunum ut hoc malum depelleretur, insolitus honor tributus est, ut nomina quæ liberi exinde habituri essent, non a patribus eorum sed a matribus traherentur.*

1. *Fides*. “Credit” has two meanings, viz. “belief” as here, and “honour,” as, It is little to your *credit* to have done so—*Tibi parvo est honori ita fecisse*. “If any credit is to be given” may be either “If any credit *must* be given”—*Siqua fides est habenda*; or “If any credit can be given”—*Siqua fides haberi potest*. *Habere fidem* signifies “to be believed” when its nom. is a *thing* not a *person*, as, The history *is believed*—*Historia fidem habet*. This story *is believed*—*Hoc fabula fidem habet*. Livy *believes* this story—*Livius huic fabulæ fidem habet*. *Livius fidem habet*, without a dat., is ambiguous. 2. *Iis quæ accepimus*—XLVI. 3. *Videatur necesse est, ut* suppressed. You *must* be a fool to say so—*Necesse est te stultum esse qui ita dicas*, or *Stultus sis necesse est qui ita dicas*. They *must* have been very brave to have undertaken this—*Necesse est eos fuisse fortissimos qui hoc susceperint*, or *Fortissimi fuerint necesse est qui hoc susceperint*. 4. *Commista*, or *permista*. To mix wine with water—*Vinum aquâ miscere*. Plato is believed to have mixed up his own opinions with those of his master—*Plato cum præceptoris sui sententiis suas commiscuisse creditur*. 5. *Quid verum sit habendum*; although *ut* (*as*) does not require to be expressed with *habeo*.

it cannot be omitted with *rejiendum* just following, for we might translate *quidque omnino falsum rejiendum*—"And what thing entirely false is to be rejected." They chose Soderinus for (or as) their chief magistrate—*Soderinum sibi summum magistratum elegerunt, i.e.,* "they chose Soderinus chief magistrate for themselves," no word required for "for" or "as." I regard (consider, or look upon) him as my friend—*Eum pro amico habeo*. They regarded him as a tyrant—*Eum pro tyranno habuerunt*. I reject this as false—*Illoc ut falsum rejicio*. *Habeo* is not followed by the inf.; therefore "I regarded him as my friend, or I reckoned him to be my friend."—*Duxi eum esse amicum meum*. They regarded (or reckoned) it as shameful—*Duxerunt turpe esse*. 6. *Graviter vezati*. You are sadly mistaken—*Magnopere erras*. 7. *Arcesso, accio* or *accio*. 8. *Animali interfecto, &c.*, or *animali interfecto et promisso præmio non accepto, or quum animal interfecisset nec præmium promissum accepisset*. 9. *Exorassent*. The women prevailed on him to pray—*Mulieres ei persuaserunt* (by argument) *ut precaretur, or eum exorarunt* (by entreaties) *ut, or ab eo impetrarunt* (prevailed by asking, or obtained by asking) *ut*. 10. *Depelleretur, or amoveretur*. 11. *Eorum*. A slightly different construction of this sentence would require the pronoun *suus* here. The sentence is remarked upon, and the reason of the change given, in § 10, c.

## CLX.

Antiocho et Philippo, bellum parantibus contra Epiphanem, qui nuper in regnum Ægypti successerat, a Romanis dictum est hunc principem omittendum esse, quum ipsi defendendum eum suscepissent. Omnino verisimile est Antiochum, ita prohibitum, destitutum fuisse, nisi ab Ætolis incitatus esset ut perseveraret, atque auxilium etiam ab Hannibale promissum ei esset. Romani, quum imperatis suis obtemperatum non esse invenissent, legatos iterum miserunt, sed Antiochum hoc adeo nihil movit, ut, etiam audacior factus, bellum Romanis ipsis indiceret. Quid effecturus fuerit, si nihil aliud, nisi bellum attendisset, dici non potest, sed ad Euboeam profectus captus est amore virginis, quæ animum ejus penitus ab incepto avocavit. Relictum jam bellum aliis gerendum tam male administratum est, ut Antiochus, exercitibus suis amissis, cogeretur pacem petere, quæ non nisi durissimis conditionibus ei data est.

1. *Bellum parantibus*—CV. 5. They were preparing for a siege (meaning that they were expecting a siege)—*Se ad obsidionem parabant*. I am fully prepared to reply—*Paratissimus sum respondere*. Hannibal was making preparations for war—*Hannibal bellum parabat*.
2. *Hunc principem esse omittendum, or ab hoc principe esse abstinendum*.
3. *Defendendum eum suscepissent, or sibi sumpserunt ut eum defenderent*.
4. *Verisimile est, &c.*—"It is likely that Antiochus, being thus prohibited, would have desisted." It is likely they know, or they probably know—*Verisimile est eos scire*.
5. *Nisi incitatus esset, atque auxilium ei promissum esset*—§ 66.
6. *Imperatis*. Following

his injunctions conducts aright—*Jussa ejus sequi recte ducit*. We scarcely find *Paritum est, sit, esset* or *esse*. 7. *Antiochum hoc adeo nihil movit* i.e., "he was not moved at all." *Adeo non* or *adeo nihil* is a fixed phrase, and cannot be varied, for we must not say *tam non* or *tam nihil*. 8. *Factus*—"Becoming, or having become" is perf. You, now becoming wise, will receive a reward—*Tu; quum jam sapiens fias, præmium accipies*. 9. *Facturi fuerint*, as depending upon *dici non potest*. I tell (or will tell) you what they would have done—*Tibi dico (dicam) quid facturi fuerint*. I told you what they would have done—*Tibi dixi quid facturi fuissent*. What would they have done? *Quid fecissent?* What do (or did) you say they would have done—*Quid eos facturos fuissetis dixisti?* 10. *Attendisset*. I attend to this matter—*Hanc rem attendo*, or *Huic rei operam do*, or *In hanc rem incumbo*. 11. *Avocavit*, or *avertit*. He turned his mind to the war—*Animum ad bellum convertit*. *Aliis gerendum*—"To be carried on by others;" it would not be wrong to use *a* or *ab* with abl. after the part in *du*.

## CLXI.

*Antequam* tertium bellum Punicum ad finem perductum est, motus in Macedonia exortī sunt, qui novi cum Græciâ belli causam præbuerunt effeceruntque ut status utriusque harum regionum penitus mutaretur. In Macedonia quidam Andrisceus, qui simulavit se esse Philippi filium, imperium vi occupavit; sumptoque nomine Philippi, factus est Thracum societate Romanis formidolosissimus, quoad a Metello devictus est, anno ante Christum centesimo quadragésimo octavo. Quum Romani hâc re, ad foedus Achæum dissolvendum, uti vellent, bellum Achæum exarsit, quod ab eodem Metello inceptum, et, ab eo traditum Mummio, in excidio Corinthi terminatum est, eodem anno quo eversa est Carthago. Potuisset expectari, ut, quum duæ hæ urbes occidissent, mercatura vehementer affligeretur; sed tantum ad Alexandriam et Rhodum transiit.

1. *Antequam*, &c., or *Priusquam finitum est, confectum est*, or *Ante tertium Punicum bellum finitum*. 2. *Causam præbuerunt*. This gave occasion to me for defending him—*Hoc mihi causam ejus defendendi præbuit*. This gave occasion to tumults—*Hoc causam tumultuum præbuit*. This gave occasion to (or created, produced) a war—*Hoc bellum creavit*. 3. *Status* or *conditio*. 4. *Simulavit*. He pretended to know—*Simulavit se scire*. Under pretence of avenging an injury—*Per speciem injuriæ ulciscendi*. They pretended to divine inspiration—*Afflatum divinum pro se tulerunt*. Do you pretend to contend with me? *Hocine tibi sumis ut mecum contendas?* He pretended to forgive men their sins—*Sibi hoc sumpsit ut hominibus peccata condonaret*. 5. *Quidam*, or *nescioquis Andrisceus*. 6. *Vi imperium occupavit*, or *vi império potitus est*. He took violent possession of the books—*Libros vi occupavit*. 7. *Thracum societate*—XLII. l. 8. *Devictus est*, the finite mood after *quoad*, although the part. follows "until." 9. *In excidio Corinthi terminatum est*, or *Eversione Corinthi terminatum est*.



## CLXII.

Mos erat in bello vetustissimus ut victor hostem superatum spoliaret, ejusque arma ablata vel sibi accingeret, vel in loco aliquo celebri suspenderet. Scripta Græcorum Latinorumque poetarum multa hujus consuetudinis exempla præbent; atque in sacris literis invenimus, quum Goliathus a Davide interfectus armisque exutus esset, ejus gladium, etsi non superbe ostentatum, diligenter in tabernaculo ab Ahimelecho sacerdote servatum esse. Dignum est commemoratu, hæcce spolia, quum vetustate imminui coepta essent, reparare nefas fuisse. Ita saltem res se apud Romanos habuit, qui forsitan putarunt, quum hæc discordiæ monumenta periissent, ipsam quoque discordiam e memoria excidere debere. "Permittitur," inquit quidam, "ut Tropæa pereant, non quod primo utilia non fuerint, aut quod ea exstrui non debuissent putemus, sed quia satis jam fecerunt, atque ut ostendatur nos æque condonare ac punire posse."

1. *Mos erat.* This expression is found with the inf., with the acc. and inf., with *ut* and subj., and also with the gen. gerund; but of course the sense and the nature of the sentence must be our guides in determining which syntax is to be adopted in each particular case. It was the *practice* of this nation to burn the dead—*Huic genti mos erat mortuos cremare.* It was *customary* for the dead to be burned—*Mos erat mortuos cremari.* It was a *custom* with the Romans for quæstors to look upon their generals as parents—*Apud Romanos mos erat ut quæstore duces suos pro parentibus haberent.* And, as if all these modes were not sufficient, sometimes *mos* itself undergoes a change of case, and the expression becomes *moris est.* 9. *Celebris*—"Frequented, much resorted to;" hence "celebrated, famous."
3. *Dignum* is better followed by the supine here than by the rel., because the antecedent to the rel. would be the clause following.
4. *Nefas.* There is the same distinction between *nefas* and *injustum* as between *fas* and *jus.*
5. *Æque ac.* The difference between *æque ac* and *tam bene quam* has been formerly pointed out.

## CLXIII.

Anno millesimo septingentesimo octogesimo tertio, quum oppidum Greiffenberg in Silesia exustum esset, Fredericus magnus pecuniam incolis tam liberaliter suppeditavit, ut intra paucos menses oppidum penitus reficeretur, et opera quæ in eo fieri solebant, iterum exercerentur. Proximo anno, quum rex forte in ea regionis parte esset, incolæ miserunt legationem quæ totius civitatis nomine ei gratias ageret. Senex in lacrymas effusus est dixitque se nequaquam dignum esse cui gratiæ ita agerentur, quod id fecisset ad quod faciendum provectus ad imperium esset; se enim potius potestatem suam de-

positurum esse quam suos miseros videret. Alio tempore dixit se potius populi sui amore fruiturum quam maximas hostium copias victurum esse. Quum se mori sentiret, consiliarios suos ad se venire jussit, dixitque et se et eos jam solito diligentiores esse oportere. "Tempore quod adhuc habeo," inquit, "mihi apte utendum est. Non meum est sed civitatis."

1. *Proximo*—XCIV. 2. *Proximus* with dat. or acc. signifies "next (in place or position);" with a or ab and abl. it signifies "next (in rank, honour, dignity, or consequence)." He stood next to the king—*Proximus regi stetit*. He was next (in rank) to the king—*Proximus a rege fuit*. Cæsar's writings are next to Cicero's works—*Cæsaris scripta proxima sunt a Ciceronis operibus*. There is another use of "next" in sentences like the following:—Agamemnon was the bravest of the Greeks next to Achilles—*Agamemnon Græcorum fortissimus fuit secundum Achillem*. 2. *Civitatis nomine*. Sums of money were given them in name of dowries—*Pecunie iis datæ sunt nomine dotium*. 3. *Gratias agerentur*—CLIV. He was thanked for not having despaired of the public safety—*Et gratiæ actæ sunt quod non de communi salute desperasset*. I have to thank you for the liberty I enjoy—*Tibi referam libertatem quâ fruor*. 4. *Potius quam*—§ 58.

## CLXIV.

Anno Romæ sexcentesimo nonagesimo secundo, Quintus Cicero, oratoris frater, quum prætor anno superiore fuisset, in Asiam ut proconsul missus est, ad provinciam amplam divitemque administrandam, ab oriente Lycaoniâ et Phrygiâ, ab occidente Ægæo mari, a meridie mari Ægyptio, et a septemtrione Paphlagoniâ, terminatam. Priusquam eam occupaturus ivit, institit Pomponio Attico, cujus sororem in matrimonio habebat, ut secum legatus proficisceretur; eumque recusasse tam ægre tulit, ut Ciceroni, qui multum apud utrumque valuit, difficultas summa esset eos reconciliandi. Hoc tamen tandem effecit, quanquam Pomponiam adjutricem non habuit, quam, in epistola ad Atticum dicit, etsi vulnus non intulerit, tamen id sanare debuisset. Non solebat proconsul potestatem diutius quam per unum annum retinere; sed hoc tempore senatus in aliis rebus tam occupabatur, ut successorem nominare omitteret; unde factum est ut Quinto magistratus per tres deinceps annos continuaretur, etsi non videtur munere suo ita functus esse ut vel senatui vel plebi probaretur.

1. *Provincia*. Both the Lat. and Eng. words are used *literally* and *metaphorically*. Gaul was reduced into the form of a Roman province (literal)—*Gallia redacta est in formam provinciam Romanæ*, or *in provinciam Romanam*. It is my province (metaph.) to teach you—

*Mihi est provincia vos docendi*, but rather *Meum est vos docere*. The province of Gaul—*Gallia provincia*, i.e., Gaul, the province. The province of the Antiates—*Antiates provincia*. *Antiatium provincia* would mean "the province of the Antiates" in the metaph. sense. 2. *Valuit*. Influence with a person—*Auctoritas apud aliquem*. Influence over a person—*Auctoritas in aliquem*—XXXVII. 2. 3. *Continuaretur*—XL. 6. 4. *Per tres deinceps annos*—"For three years in succession, or for three successive years." 5. *Probaretur*—XCV. 6. I approve of his purpose—*Ejus propositum probo*. His purpose was approved of by me—*Ejus propositum mihi probatum est*.

## - CLXV.

Themistocles, dux Atheniensis, sapientiâ adeo excelluit, ut, quanquam socios viros potentissimos habebat; ei præcipue victoria de Xerxe reportata tribuenda sit. In consiliis suis excogitandis nunquam ei longa deliberatione opus fuit; vix ulla res evenire potuit ad quam paratus non esset; et tanta fuit ejus eloquentia, ut numquam non aliis persuaderet id quod commendaret optimum esse factu. Magnopere dolendum est virum tam eximium famam suam, derelictâ viâ virtutis, maculasse. Ut alia vitia omittam, dici potest eum, quum ob intolerabilem arrogantiam patria pulsi esset, ad Persas, quorum copias antea fugasset, transiisse, ac promississe se, si pecuniam et classem sibi dedissent, bellum Græciæ illaturum. Quæ rogavit, suppeditata ei sunt; et nulla est causa dubitandi quin impium promissum servaturus fuerit, si Conon non fuisset, quem sibi resistere posse sciebat. Desperans igitur se propositum suum perficere posse, sibi mortem conscivit.

1. *Socios viros potentissimos habebat*—"He had the ablest men as associates." He associated his son as his partner in the government—*Sibi adscivis filium suum imperii participem*. Romulus had Tatius for an associate on the throne—*Romulus Tatium regni socium habebat*. 2. *Præcipue*—"Principally, particularly, chiefly, above all others, to a greater extent or degree than others." *Præsertim*—"Particularly"—is a restricting word. *Nominatim*—"Particularly, by name." He spoke to all, particularly to you—*Omnibus dixit, præcipue sibi*. Old men are to be honoured, particularly if they are virtuous—*Senes sunt honorandi, præsertim si sunt probi*: *præsertim* is used here because we first state something in reference to old men generally, and restrict that to some particular persons. Some countries, particularly Lydia and Phrygia—*Quædam regiones, nominatim Lydia et Phrygia*. 3. *Nunquam non persuaderet*—"Never did not convince." I failed to convince him—*Ei persuadere non potui*. This could not fail to convince him—*Hoc ei non potuit non persuadere*. Time failed me—*Tempus me defecit*. 4. *Commendaret*. They recommended (advised) him not to use unserviceable words another time—*Ei suaserunt ne verbis inutilibus alio tempore uteretur*. He recommended (or spoke in favour of) this measure to the people—*Hoc consilium populo suavit*. He commended his son to the protection of the Romans—*Fi-*

*lium suum fidei Romanorum commendavit.* He recommended cruelty—*Crudelitatem suavit.* 5. *Optimum esse factu*—"Was the most eligible," lit. "The best thing to be done." They were not eligible into the state—*In civitatem non potuerunt cooptari.* *Maculasse*—"That he should have stained, i. e., that he did stain." *Via virtutis.* The paths of wickedness—*Via sceleris.*

## CLXVI.

Niobe, una ex Tantali filiabus Amphionisque uxor, ab Homero dicitur sex filios totidemque filias peperisse; quamquam, ut alii narrant, liberi ejus numero ad quatuordecim aut viginti fuerunt. Guadio plusquam prudenti ob tantam sobolem elata, Latonam, duorum tantummodo liberorum, Apollinis et Dianæ, matrem, contempsit; et arrogantiam eo perduxit, ut palam ei insultaret sacrorumque ejus celebrationem interrumperet, affirmans seipsam, quæ beneficium tanto majus quam alterâ in patriam suam contulisset, digniorem profecto esse quæ a genere humano coleretur. Hæ contumeliæ majores fuerunt quam ut a Latona perferrentur; quæ quum Apollini et Dianæ institisset ut injurias suas ulciscerentur, ille omnes Niobes filios interfecit, hæc autem omnes filias. Niobe, jam non mater, dolore adeo stupefacta est, ut in saxum conversa et turbine ad montem Sipylum in Lydiam transportata esse dicatur.

1. *Totidem*—§ 32. 2. *Eo*—"So far, to that height or pitch." 3. *Palam* is to *aperit* as *clam* is to *secret*. 4. *Quam altera* (*contulisset* understood). 5. *Numero ad quatuordecim fuerunt*—"Amounted to 14," lit. "Were in number to 14." These two things amount to (or are) one and the same—*Hæc duo unum idemque sunt.* 6. *Beneficium*—"Benefit, favour or kindness conferred." *Favor*—"Kindness, disposition, desire or will of conferring a favour." 7. *Quam ut, or quam quæ.* 8. *Dolore stupefacta.* *Affectus dolore*—"Affected with grief, i. e., grieved;" but, *Commotus dolore*—"Moved or affected by the grief," but not implying that the person so moved or affected is himself grieved; he may be affected by the grief of some other. *Fra dolore*—"For (great) grief." *Propter dolorem* means simply "for grief," with reference merely to its existence, not to its greatness. 9. *Liberi*—"Children" with reference to parents, however old or young they may be. *Pueri*—"Children" as regards age.

## CLXVII.

Carolus Secundus, quum exularet, cum iis quos circa se habebat crebrò deliberavit num sibi in Scotiam ire expediret; atque id, quod facili expectari potuisset, tot fere consilia diversa quot erant consilarii, accepit. Inter argumenta quibus usi sunt ii qui eum non redire voluerunt, unum hujusmodi fuit; Expeditionem infelicem quam Dux Hamiltor

superiore suscepisset cum exercitu tam magno et tam bene ornato quam unquam intra latos Scotiæ fines conscriptus esset aut iterum unquam ibi conscribi posset, manifestum facere quam tenue Scotorum auxilium esset, eosque vel non posse vel nolle toti Angliæ potestati resistere. Argumentum aliud huic simile fuit, quum Scotiæ imperium a Marchione Argatheliæ tum tenebatur, jure metui posse ne rex, quum in Scotiam pervenisset, ab Argathelio comprehenderetur atque in Cromuelli manus traderetur.

1. *Exulare*. To send, drive into exile—*In exilium mittere, agere*. Among the Romans there were two kinds of banishment—*exilium* and *relegatio*. *Exilium*, when a person was banished for life, his goods confiscated, &c. *Relegatio* was a milder punishment, the person being ordered to quit Rome for a shorter or longer period; thus, the Tarquins were subjected to *exilium*, Ovid to *relegatio*. 2. *Cum iis quos circa se habebat*, or *cum iis qui circum eum erant*. *Cum iis circum eum* without a verb would not do. 3. *Deliberavit num expediret*—"Deliberated whether it was expedient." It is *expedient* for the state to know these things—*Expediit reipublicæ hæc scire*. 4. *Id quod*—§ 65. 5. *Tam magno*, not *tanto*, because it would require *quantus* instead of *quam* in the following clause; but *quantus* would not suit *tam bene ornato*, while *quam* meets both as they are. 6. *Unquam*—"Ever, at any time." *Semper*—"Ever, always." Did you ever (at any time) do so?—*Unquamne ita fecisti?* I ever (always) did so—*Semper ita feci*.

## CLXVIII.

Dani, mortuo rege suo Frothone, quo tempore regnum hæreditarium non fuit, convenerunt deliberandi causa utrum eidem domui potestas summa continuaretur, an alii jam daretur, et, quum filium natu maximum non invenissent, quem igitur mortuum esse credebant, etsi revera adhuc vivebat, a patre suo peregrè missus ut educaretur, iis tandem placuit imperium ei deferre qui in certum diem carmen optimum de proximi gubernatoris sui meritis condidisset. Hiarnus qui eo tempore eorum omnium peritissimus versificandi fuit, et hoc non est dicere eum bonum versificatorem fuisse, multo minus poetam, paucos versus scripsit, qui, quum forte multitudini barbaræ placerent, auctori suo regnum de quo certabatur, pepererunt. Dicta sunt multa de his versibus, qui tamen a nobis intelligi non possunt qui Danicè haud scimus; et parum voluptatis capi ex Latina eorum interpretatione potest quippe quæ ab homine confecta sit qui adeo non rectè scribit, ut in prosodiam et syntaxin peccet, præterquam quod non paucis verbis barbaris utitur.

1. *Continuaretur*. This tense is used because the notion of *futurity* is sufficiently implied by *deliberandi* (§ 40). 2. *Carmen*—"Piece of poetry." This is a *piece* (metaphorical) of *impiety* which you ought not to attempt—*Hæc est impietas quam tentare non debes*. They

broke the statues to pieces—*Statuas confregerunt*. 3. *Peritissimus*. *Expert* at arms—*Gnarus armorum*. 4. *Hoc non est dicere*—"This is not saying," lit. "This is not to say"—§ 44, c. Additional examples are—*Being poor is no disgrace—Pauperem esse non est dedecori*, which sentence, if the ellipsis were filled up, would be *Hominem esse pauperem, non est dedecori*—"That a man be poor, is no disgrace." There is a great difference between *being poor and having nothing—Multum interest inter esse pauperem et nihil habere*, i.e., "There is a great difference between that a man be poor and that he have nothing." This is *being* always a child, or this is *to be* always a child—*Hoc est semper esse puerum*, i.e., "This is that one be always a child." 5. *Dicta sunt multa*—"Much has (many things have) been said. More has been said—*Plura dicta sunt*. Little, less has been said—*Pauca, pauciora dicta sunt*. 6. *Danidē scimus*—CLII. 7. *Peccet*—CLI. 8. *Præterquam quod*—X. 4. 9. *Non paucis*; if non were placed before *utilur*, the meaning would be greatly altered.

## CLXIX.

Asia, ex eo quod fuit generis humani incunabula, imperiorum primorum sedes, et regio in qua Paganismus, Judaismus, et Mahomedanismus originem habuerunt, et in qua religio Christiana primum promulgata est, theatrum fuit rerum quæ maximi sunt momenti et maxime animum movent. Scientia quam antiqui de ea habuerunt, admodum exigua fuisse videtur. Concesserunt septemtrionalem esse oceanum cujus in littoribus viverent Hyperborei, quietum genus hominum; et nomine Scytharum appellarunt gentes eas quæ terram a Ponto Euxino et Caspio mari septemtrionem versus incolebant; et quasdam partes quæ hujus continentis sunt, Herodotus in Europa ponit. Romani nomen Asiæ non nisi ei parti dederunt quæ postea Asia Minor vocata est, quæque nunc est provincia Anatoliæ; eam dividentes, ut antea fecerant Græci, in Asiam intra Taurum Asiamque ultra Taurum, et culmen hujus alti montis habentes pro termino inter nationes excultas et barbaras. Confitendum tamen est fines diversis temporibus magis minusve latos fuisse. Efficta est Asia sub imagine mulieris, dextrâ serpentem, sinistrâ gubernaculum tenentis, dextroque pede navis proram prementis; aut turre in capite gerentis atque anchoram tenentis.

1. *Ex eo quod*, &c. This idiom has already been treated. He transgressed the laws, and in consequence was punished—*Leges violavit, et propterea* (or *ideoque*) *punitus est*. 2. *Momenti*. An important business—*Res gravis*. 3. *Animum movent*. He was more interested (or he felt a deeper interest) in the safety of his friend—*Majorem curam salutis amici sui habuit*, or *Major cura de salute amici sui ei fuit*, or *Salus amici sui majori curæ ei fuit*. 4. *Concesserunt*. *Concedo* takes the dat. when it signifies "to yield to, give place to," but the acc. when it signifies "to grant." He complied with the re-

quest—*Postulationi concessit*, i.e., "he yielded to the requesting," or *Postulatum concessit*, i.e., "he granted the request (the thing requested)." He yields to no one—*Nemini concedit*. When it means "to allow, admit, concede," it takes the acc. and inf.; and when "to permit, not oppose," ut. with subj. 5. *Viverent*—indirect, being part of their admission, which does not extend, however, beyond this clause. 6. *A Ponto Euxino Septentrionem versus*—"from the Black Sea towards the North." 7. *Asia* (gen.)—VI. 3. 8. *Non nisi ei parti, or ei parti soli*—CIL. 9. *Est provincia*—"Is the province;" of course neither *formo*—"to form, shape," nor *facio*—"to make," nor any other verb of this sort would suit here. 10. *Pede proram prementis*—"resting her foot on the prow," lit. "pressing the prow with her foot." The cloud rested on the tabernacle—*Nubes in tabernaculo insedit*.

## CLXX.

Medio seculo duodecimo, Ancona urbs, quæ ad id tempus principum finitimorum alicui paruerat, libera civitas, nescimus quomodo, facta est, atque in odium incurrit Venetorum quorum mercaturam ad sese transferre incipiebat. X. Kal. August., anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo septimo Fredericus eam obsidere aggressus est; sed cives, qui omnes periti nautæ erant, incitantibus adjuvantibusque Græcis, sese tam fortiter defenderunt, ut Imperator, metuens ne exercitus sui fugerentur, paucis post diebus discederet, declarans, iis qui ita pugnarent nunquam resisti posse, eosque liberos esse debere. Tantum quatuor anni fuerunt quum incolæ iterum impugnati sunt, et quanquam tam fortes, quam antea, fuerunt, fame in ea extrema (acc. plu.) redacti sunt, ut Archiepiscopo Moguntino, qui forte hostium copiis præerat, pecuniam ingentem pollicerentur ea conditione ut obsidionem solveret. Archiepiscopus insultans iis suasit ut pecuniam reserarent, quem enim scire quis ejus dominus esset? "Quod," inquit, "ad me attinet, ego, qui totum aurum vestrum expecto, omnium stultissimus essem si partem acciperem."

1. *Parere alicui*. He forced them to be subject (absolute)—*Eos servire coegit*.
2. *Mercatura*—"The trade of merchandise." *Mercæ*—"Merchandise—the commodity." He exercises (pursues) merchandise, or carries on trade—*Mercaturam exercet*. "Trade," "profession," is made by *ars*, as, He made money by his trade—*Pecuniam ex arte sua confecit*.
3. *Is . . . eosque*—§ 66.
4. *Quum*—"When, at the time when."
5. *Ad ea extrema ut*. To the last extremity—*Ad extrema*.
6. *Insultans*—XI. 13.
7. *Quem enim*—§ 38, d.
8. *Omnium stultissimus*—"The most foolish of all." *Maximus stultorum* would mean "the largest, biggest of fools."
9. *Si acciperem*—CLV.

## CLXXI.

Quum controversia inter Argivos et Lacedæmonios orta esset de parvo territorio cui Thyreæ nomen erat, mutuo con-

venit ut res uno proelio decerneretur; ut trecenti utrinque milites in aciem prodirent; utque victores agrum de quo certaretur possiderent. Diu acriterque pugnatum est; quumque nox finem certamini fecisset, inventum est solum tres ex pugnatoribus esse superstites, duos ex parte Argivorum, et unum ex Lacedæmoniorum. Argivi igitur sese vicisse existimantes, domum abierunt ut populares suos certiores facerent; sed Lacedæmonius, qui supererat, ad posterum usque diem in acie permansit et corpora cæsorum spoliavit. Utrique jam sibi victoriam vindicarunt; Argivis dicentibus se tot milites non amisisse quot Lacedæmonios, illis autem contra affirmantibus duos Argivos certamine destituisse atque aufugisse. Bellum itaque redintegratum est; et multo sanguine effuso, quum victoria penes Lacedæmonios tandem fuisset, Thyrea eorum facta est.

1. *Certaretur*, being *indirect*, as contained in the *agreement*. 2. *Diū acriterque pugnatum est*—"It was long and keenly fought." The *crown* was long and keenly contested—*De regno diū acriterque certatum est*. 3. *Fecisset* or *imponisset*. *Certamini* governed by *fecisset*; but with this verb *certaminis* may be used, the genitive being governed by *finem*. 4. *Ex parte, utrinque*, and *utrinque*—See LXXX. 2. 5. *Spoliavit*—"Stripped," i.e., "plundered or robbed them of whatever was valuable." "Strip"—"make bare" is made by *nudo*. 6. *Illis* is used to mark the *change of persons* (§ 14). 7. *Victoria penes Lacedæmonios fuisset*, or *Victoria Lacedæmoniorum fuisset*. 8. *Eorum*, the gen. of *possession*.

## CLXXII.

Catoni Uticensi infeliciter evenit ut tempore viveret quo avaritia, luxuria, atque ambitio Romæ valebant; quo religio et leges negligebantur; et quo tota civitatis species adeo mutata et deformata est, ut dictum sit, si quis prioris ætatis ab inferis excitatus fuisset, vix futurum fuisse ut populum Romanum agnosceret. Cato unus fuit ex paucis qui causam virtutis defenderunt; qui nec promissis allici nec minis terri potuerunt; quique noluerunt primores violata veritate adulari. Etsi cives ejus praviore fuerunt quam ut ejus exemplo moverentur, non potuerunt animo eum non admirari; nec quisquam fuit cujus in opinione fiduciam majorem haberent aut cujus de integritate minus dubitarent. Ejus amor veritatis tantus et tam bene notus fuit ut in proverbium veniret; et judicia ejus de rebus quæ ad eum relatæ sunt, vim oraculi habuisse videntur. In cujus rei testimonium commemorari potest viros complures primarios, quum de tribunatu contenderent et decreto senatus parere nollent, dele-



gisse Catonem qui controversiam dirimeret, et promisisse se quidquid ille statuisset facturos esse.

1. *Infelicitur evenit*, or simply *accidit*. 2. *Tempore quo*—"At a time at which." *Eo tempore quo* would be "at the time as which," as if there had been only one particular time at which these vices prevailed. 3. *Religio* in classical Lat. signifies "outward religious rite, ceremony, or performance," or "the paying respect to those rites;" but it does not signify what we understand by "the religion of the heart, inward religion." The first writer that uses *religio* in the sense of "true religion, or the religion of the heart," is Lactantius, one of the Christian fathers; and therefore *religio* in Lactantius will have quite a different meaning from *religio* in Cicero. 4. *Dictum sit*—"Has been said," with reference to present time; it does not depend on *deformata est*, for it was not said then, when the state was in that condition, but since then and previous to the present time. 5. *Ab inferis*, a classical heathen expression; *e mortuis* is quite good, and more in accordance with our notions. *Excitatus*, properly applied to a mere human being who has not the power of rising in himself; but if "rise" be thus applied to Christ, *surgo* should be used. 6. *Violata veritate*—"Truth being violated." *Veritas*—Truth, the principle of truth, trueness. *Verum*—Truth, that or the thing which is true. He spoke the truth—*Verum locutus est*. He venerates the truth—*Veritatem veneratur*. He did this at his own expense—*Hoc suo sumptu fecit*. To defray expenses—*Sumptus suppeditare*. To lay out expenses on a thing—*In rem sumptus erogare*. 7. *Animo*—"Heart, mind;" the Eng. idiom differs from the Lat. in this case as it does in that of *vita* formerly noticed. *Cor* is not the word in this sense. 8. *Dubitarent*—XLI. 5. 9. *Vim*—"Force, authority." He had the authority of the senators for what he did—*Ea quæ fecit, senatorum auctoritate fecit*. Cicero is my authority for this opinion—*Cicero est mihi auctor hujus opinionis*. This was done by the authority of the state—*Hoc publicè factum est*; *publicè* does not mean "publicly (openly)," but "by public authority, or at the public expense." 10. *Species*. In appearance, not in reality—*Specie non re*. 11. *Amor veritatis*—"Regard, love of truth." I will do this without regard to what he has said—*Hoc faciam, nullâ habita ratione eorum quædixit*. To regard truth—*Respicere veritatem*. He showed a regard for the safety of his offspring—*Rationem salutis prolis suæ habuit*. 12. *Testimonium*. He gave undoubted proofs of his sincerity—*Certa sinceritatis documenta dedit*. He gave the strongest proofs of his intention to favour him—*Maxima dedit documenta sibi in animo esse et favere*. 13. *Tribunatu*—"The tribuneship, or the office of tribune;" so, *Consulatus, dictatura*, &c.—"The office of consul, of dictator," &c.

### CLXXIII.

Pridie quam proelium cruentum inter Gallos et Italos ad Ticinum factum est, Franciscus, Gallicus rex, qui ipse suis copiis præerat, duces suos convocatos rogavit ut sententiam liberè dicerent, rectumne esset certamen statim iniri. Dux Trimulæ, cui, quum senio infirmus esset gravique dextri pedis dolore laboraret, medici vehementer suaserunt, ne ex lecto se moveret, vitam in discrimen adducere maluit quam

tali tempore non adesse. Ad concilium se lecticâ ferendum curavit, atque in tantis, quibus laborabat incommodis, solus tam prudens fuit ut videret, aut tam audax ut diceret, quanto rex periculo sese objiceret. "Quum," inquit, "rei toti attentè studuerim, ita loqui paratus sum ut saltem mihi ipsi placeam; et quum nihil habeam quod metuum, profecto loquar ut sentio."

1. *Cruentum proelium*—"A bloody battle, a battle in which much blood is shed." *Cruentæ manus*—"Bloody, cruel hands." *Sanguineus*—"Bloody, consisting of blood, or blood-like." *A bloodless victory*—"Incruenta victoria." *Exsanguis*—"Bloodless, pale." 2. *Ad Ticinum*—"Before, at Ticinum." *Ante*—"Before, in front of." 3. *Rectumne*—see *Possitne*, CXX. 4. *Senium*—"Old age." Worn out with age *Defectus senio*. *Ætas*—"Stage, or time of life." 5. *Pedis dolore*—"Pain of the foot;" not in *pede* So, A pain in the head—*Dolor capitis*. 6. *In tantis*, &c. This transposition of *incommodis* is very elegant; compare *Ed, quâ par est, curâ*, &c. *In* may be translated here "notwithstanding"—see CVIII. 9. 7. *Tam prudens fuit ut*—"Was so prudent that," better than *Eam prudentiam habuit ut*, or, *Soli ea prudentia fuit ut*. 8. *Rei*—"The subject, matter." Various subjects—*Varia res*. It has often been a subject of inquiry what reason he could have had, &c. *Sæpe quæsitum est quâ ei potuerit esse causa*. 9. *Saltem mihi*—"At least myself" (if not others). *Saltem* must be carefully distinguished from *minimum*—"At least, at the lowest calculation"—LXXVII.

## CLXXIV.

Jam in eo erat ut Anconii, quorum urbem dictum vobis est ab eo esse obsessam quem ita occupari minimè decebat, in deditionem venirent, quum Gulielmus Adelardius, Marchio Ferraræ, et Aldruda, comitissa Bertinorii, re alia nulla adducti nisi cupiditate ut generosi viderentur, iis auxilio, uterque cum copiis haud exiguis, venerunt. Quum Gulielmus duos exercitus, suum sociæque suæ in locum commodum convocasset, Aldruda prodiit eosque ita allocuta est; "Quum huc venerim ut particeps sim periculorum vestrorum, quæ, priusquam domum redierimus, non dubito multa fore, mihi, ut aliis ducibus, permitti potest, ut apud vos concioner, quod spero me aliquid quod utile esse possit dicturam esse, etsi non est cur expectetis ut facundè loquar. Ea non sum quæ discordiam foveam aut crudelitatem suadeam; sed, inquam, si virtutem magnam præstant qui voluptatis solius causâ inter se contendunt, quanto majorem putatis vestram esse debere qui in opere omnium quæ suscipi possunt gloriosissimo versamini? Ne igitur manus vestræ iis parcant qui omnino indigni sunt quibus parcat; sed gladii vestri odioso eorum sanguine penitus madefiant."

1. *Jam in eo erat ut*, or *haud multum abfuit quin*; in this phrase *erat* is impersonal. They were on the point of perishing—*Jam in eo erat ut perirent*, or *haud multum abfuit quin perirent*. I gained my point in having this done—*Tenui ut hoc fieret*. He carried his point—*Voto positus est*. I obeyed him in these points—*Ei his in rebus obtemperavi*. This point has been doubted—*De hac re dubitatum est*. They were inferior to him in point of bravery—*Ei virtute cesserunt*. 2. *Minimè decebat*—"It by no means became;" *male* would be quite improper here, as the idea contained in it is quite inconsistent with that contained in *deceat*. Is it becoming in him to do this? *Decetne eum hoc facere?* 3. *Occupari*—"To be employed"—"to employ himself;" *Adhiberi*—"To be employed (by another person)."  
4. *Cupiditate*, followed by *ut*, it being impossible to introduce a gerund here. 5. *Uterque* having *venit* understood. 6. *Haud exiguis*. Considerable loss—*Haud exiguum damnum*. He had considerable influence—*Haud exiguum auctoritatem habuit*. 7. *Quum Gulielmus*, not *Gulielmus quum*. 8. *Quæ multa*; this idiom was formerly explained; see also § 3. 9. *Redierimus*—"We shall have returned." 10. *Ut*—"Like, in like manner as (it is to other generals)"—LXXXVIII. 11. *Non est cur expectetis*—"There is no reason why you should expect," or "you have no reason to expect." *Non opus est ut expectetis*, would mean "there is no need (necessity) that you expect." 12. *Facundè*. There is no adv. from *eloquens*. 13. *Foveam*. *Mæcenas* encouraged literature—*Mæcenas literas fovit*. He encouraged his men to fight bravely—*Hortatus est suos ut fortiter pugnarent*. I was encouraged by them to do these things—*Ab iis incitatus sum ad hæc faciendâ*. I was encouraged by their example to do these things—*Eorum exemplo incitatus sum ad hæc faciendâ*. 14. *Præstant*—I. 15. *Versamini*. *In magno periculo versatus sum*—I was in great danger.

## CLXXV.

Henricus, Galliæ rex, ejus nominis tertius, si ob omnia quæ fecit laudari non potest, multis tamen dotibus quæ principi sunt honori præditus fuit. De virtute ejus nunquam dubitatum est, ejusque doctrina, si minus ampla, certe solidior utiliorque fuit quam hominum quorundam qui eo tempore se plurima scire profitebantur. Cobhamus, vir non minoris judicii quam experientiæ, dixit se ut legatum ad aulas varias ivisse, sed in nulla earum se unquam audivisse quemquam qui sapientius quam Henricus loquutus sit; eum primo plene respondisse, sed, more prudentis principis, declarasse sumendum esse tempus ad deliberandum; et responsum ejus posterius raro aut nunquam a priore discrepasse, nec unquam a consiliariis ejus emendari potuisse. Legatus Gallicus peregrino principi ita de eo loquutus est; "Maxima nobis causa est, cur Deo gratias agamus qui talem nobis regem dederit. Vituperantur ii gubernatores, qui non nisi oculis alienis vident; sed nos, qui hanc calamitatem interdum experti sumus, jam regem habemus tam mitem ut causas nos-

tras audiat, et tam sapientem ut controversias nostras componat."

1. *Henricus, Gallia res.* But, Henry of France—*Henricus Gallus.* 2. *Dotibus.* Good qualities—*Virtutes.* Bad qualities—*Vitia.* 3. *Quam hominum*—§ 19. *Plurima*—"Most things, i.e., more than all others"—§ 2. 4. *Aulas.* He found an asylum at the court of Peleus—*Asylum invenit in aula Pelet.* *Aula*—"A king's court or hall." *Curia*—"A court (hall) of justice." He was summoned to (or before) a court of justice—*In ius vocatus est*; if *curia* were used in this sentence, the meaning would be merely "into the hall of justice," which is not the meaning intended. 5. *More,* not *similis*—LXXXVIII. 6. *Posterior* and *Prior*—§ 15. 7. *Dederit* following *qui*.

## CLXXVI.

Titus Manlius, diem patri suo dictum esse certior factus, ad domum accusatoris noctu ivit, et privato colloquio cum eo impetrato, pugiunculum destrinxit, minisque mortis præsensis iusjurandum ei extorsit se ab actione destitutum esse. Paulo post, insignem se bello reddidit, principe Gallico staturæ incredibilis in singulari certamine interfecto; quod hostes adeo conterruit, ut, de cæteris militibus Romanis ex eo judicantes, abjectis armis, se quam celerrimè in patriam suam reciperent. Hoc tempore Manlius cognomen Torquati adeptus est; quum aureo torque quem adversarius ejus gesserat sese ornasset. Ei magnum meritum insignem honorem peperit, ut bis dictator diceretur, priusquam munere consulis functus est; sed quum iterum se dictaturâ abdicasset, consulatus ei tributus est. Cum Decio Mure ad periculosam civitatum Latinarum rebellionem reprimendam profectus, decretum edidit, nequis miles ex ordinibus excederet aut pugnaret nisi permittebat imperatore. Ipsius filius hocce imperium primus violavit, ad singulare certamen a principe Latino provocatus; atque inexorabilis consul interficiendum eum curavit. Hancce severitatem plerisque displicere invenit; et, quum postea censura ei a senatu oblata esset, accipere eam noluit,icens, quemadmodum rigorem suum populus pati non posset, sic se licentiam ejus ferre non posse.

1. *Diem dictum esse.* "He was appointed a day to stand his trial on a charge of murder," is always briefly expressed *Dies cordis ei dictus est.* 2. *Noctu, nocte, or per noctem.* 3. *Impetrare*—"To obtain, get by asking." *Nancisci*—"To obtain, get or light upon" without any effort on the part of the person to get it. This latter is used in Cæsar most commonly in reference to the weather or season, as *Nactus idoneam tempestatem.* 4. *In singulari certamine.* In close combat—*Cominus.* 5. *Se dictaturâ abdicasset*—XLVI. 6. *Ne*—"Prohibiting, preventing, forbidding;" "ordering, commanding," &c., in such a sentence as this will be made by *ut.* 7. *Nisi, &c.*—§ 60. 8. *Noluit accipere.* He declined battle—*Proelium detractavit.*

## CLXXVII.

Henricus Primus callidior fuit quam ut Roberti fratris sui fautores pateretur ullam retinere potestatem quæ contra rempublicam verti posset; ideoque, etsi convenerat ut nulla iis injuria fieret, omni quæ excogitari potuit ratione ad eos vexandos perdendosque usus est. Robertus, quum de crudelibus hisce et injustis factis audisset, Angliam visit ut amicos suos sublevaret, quos fere omnes bonis suis exutos, non paucos in exilium missos, et nonnullos in carcerem conjectos invenit. Eorum calamitates adeo non lenire potuit ut cito deprehenderet periculum esse ne ipse caperetur et interficeretur; et quidem non nisi ea conditione ut grandem pecuniam solveret, permissum ei est ut ad Normanricam rediret. Ei fatum non fuit vel id asylum diu habere; quum enim allatus esset nuncius bellum civile ibi sævire, frater ejus hanc bonam esse sibi occasionem provinciam eam occupandi putavit. Dixit nullius loci imperium tali homini, qualis Robertus esset, committi unquam debuisse; bellum quod exarsisset rei alii nulli nisi principis ignaviæ ascribendum esse; et quicumque ei successisset, eum magis idoneum fore qui gubernator esset. Ipsi nobiles Normanrici, qui alii aliorum agros sæpe diriperant, quum hæc consuetudo iis tandem displiceret, regem Anglicum ut sese interponeret rogarunt.

1. *Omni ratione*—"Every means or method"—LXXX. 4. 2. *Rei alii nulli*. As *nihil* is defective, having only the nom. and acc., "nothing" has frequently to be made by *res nulla*. They said nothing—*Nihil dixerunt*. Nothing was said—*Nihil dictum est*. They used nothing—*Re nulla usi sunt*. Nero was distinguished for nothing but his cruelty—*Nero re nullâ nisi crudelitate insignis fuit*. God created all things out of nothing—*Deus omnia ex nihilo* (abl. of *nihilum*) creavit. John is nothing better than his neighbours—*Joannes nihilo melior* (better by nothing) *est quam alii*. I value this book nothing, or I set no value on this book—*Hunc librum nihili aestimo*. In the last three examples "nothing" is not equivalent to *nulla res*—"no thing"—but rather to "non-entity," and therefore *nihilum* is the only proper word. They were ashamed of nothing—*Eos nullius rei* (no thing) *pudivit*; here again *nihilum* will not do, for "nothing" is not equivalent to non-entity. 3. *Regem rogarunt ut*, or *a rege petierunt ut*. They applied to the king for assistance—*Auxilium a rege petierunt*.

## CLXXVIII.

Ægyptus, quo tempore Cæsar ed pervenit, maximè perturbata fuit, quum de regni successione certaretur. Cæsar Ptolemæum et Cleopatram ad se citavit, et sibi jus controversiæ dirimendæ sumens, decrevit, ex Auletæ morientis voluntate,

ut hi duo communiter regnarent in Ægypto, eorumque frater et soror natu minores in Cypro regnarent. Verisimile est Cæsarem regnum non ita divisurum fuisse, sed totum vel Cleopatraræ soli, cui eum favisse bene notum est, vel ei et Ptolemæo communiter, exclusis aliis duobus, daturum fuisse, nisi vidisset facta sua priora Alexandrinis displicere, ideoque id facere voluisset quod acceptum iis fore existimaret. His consiliis acriter restiterunt Photinus et Achilles, qui ad portum profecti sunt eo consilio ut classe potirentur; quæ si tuta in eorum potestatem venisset, parum dubii esse potest, quin hi gubernatores Ægypti futuri fuerint. Hoc Cæsarem non fugit, qui, quum ipse non posset classe statim uti, potius quam permetteret ut hi eam tenerent, omnes naves incendit. In quo incendio, quum flammæ ad oppidum pertinuissent, bibliotheca Alexandrina, omnium iis temporibus instructissima, penitus consumpta est.

1. *Ea Aulete morientis voluntate*—lit. "according to the wish of Aulete while dying," the Lat. idiom being more precise than the Eng. So, Our Saviour's dying love—*Servatoris nostri morientis amor*. A letter was sent demanding—*Epistola missa est in quâ postulatum est*. He wrote a letter confessing—*Epistolam scripsit in quâ confessus est*. Compare also XXI. 5. 2. *Exclusis aliis duobus*—"Excluding the other two, or the other two being excluded." 3. *Displicere*—imperf., the displeasure continuing even then. 4. *Eo consilio ut*—"With that design that." This was designed for you—*Hoc tibi destinatum fuit*. This was designed for the public good—*Hoc ad bonum publicum* (or *hoc bono publico*) *destinatum fuit*. 5. *Quin futuri fuerint*—"That they would have been, or that they were destined to be, or about to be, or to be;" *fuerint* being past in relation to *potest esse*, and *futuri* expressing futurity in relation to the time of the incident, both which ideas are contained in "would have been." *Quin futuri sint*—"That they will be, or are about to be"—§§ 39, 40. 6. *Potius quam*—§ 58. 7. *Temporibus*, not *diebus*, as was formerly observed.

## CLXXIX.

Cræsus, Lydiæ rex, deceptus oraculo quod ei dixerat, eum, si Halyn flexuosum transisset, regnum majus quam de quo cogitaret eversurum esse, adductus est ut Cyro Persarum regi bellum inferret, etsi Sandanis, omnium qui in regno tum erant sapientissimus, eum monuerat ut tale periculum ne adiret sed paci studeret, certum enim esse ejus copias, etsi alibi victrices, quum in Persia cum iis pugnaretur, victum iri, Cræsus dixit facilius sibi fore exercitum in hostium terram ducere quam incursioni domi resistere, seque omnia quæ haberet potius amissurum esse quam non ulcisceretur injurias de quibussæpius questus esset, quam principem, qualis ipse esset, deceret, quasque dubium esset num alius quisquam tandiu laturus

fuisse. Frustra Sandanis eum dehortari perseveravit, etsi locutus est quasi voce cœlesti dictum ei esset vel aliquo modo afflatu divino sciret quid eventurum esset. Crœsus statuit non impediri; neque opus esse potest ut narremus quid ei acciderit.

1. *Certum enim esse ejus copias*—"For (that) it was certain that his forces (§ 36 f). I am sure he is gone—*Pro certo habeo eum abiisse*. Sure signs—*Certa signa*. He is sure to arrive to-day—*Certum est eum hodie perventurum esse*, or *Cerid hodie perveniet*. 2. *Cum iis pugnaretur*. To encounter an enemy—*Cum hoste configere*. To encounter danger, labour—*Periculum, laborem adire*. *Pugnaretur*, not *pugnatum esset*, for they "would be conquered" not after the engagement, but in the engagement. 3. *Potiusquam non ulcisceretur*—§ 58. 4. *Qualis*—LXXXVIII. 2. 5. *De quibus questus esset . . . quasque dubium esset*—rel. clauses in indirect narrative. 6. *Laturus fuisset*; *fuisset* being past in relation to *dubium esset*, and *laturus* expressing futurity in relation to the time of the injuries—CLXXVIII. 5. 7. *Quasi dictum ei esset, vel sciret*—"As if he had been told (previously of course), or were (then) knowing"—§ 39. 8. *Eventurum esset*—§ 40.

## CLXXX.

Thucydides narrat nomen quo Sicilia insula Græcis primum innotuerit, Trinacriam fuisse, et incolarum, de quibus quidquam ad eorum aures pervenisset, primos fuisse Cyclopes et Læstrigones, quorum historiam, tamen, quum in ea multa obscura atque incerta essent, hic, solito iudicio, poetis tractandam relinquit. Sicanos, a quibus ea nomen Sicaniæ traxit, ex Hispania transisse credit, sedibus quas ibi habuissent expulsos, atque in terram quæ proxima eos accipere posset coactos. Postea Siculi, Italia vi simili exacti, Sicanos celeriter maxima optimaque insulæ parte exuerunt; et quum eos modo non exterminassent, regioni id nomen dederunt quod adhuc retinet. Tempore antiquissimo Phœnices varia tenebant per oram loca, ad mercaturam exercendam delecta; et verisimile est, quum indigenæ ignorarent quid Phœnices facerent, et simul ab iis malè tractarentur, locum inde datum esse rumoribus Siciliam a monstis infestari. Nullus mercator Græcus eò accedere ausus est; sed nonnulli milites Phœnices, a Trojæ obsidione redeuntes, vi tempestatis in oram Africæ acti, quum rectâ inde ad Græciam progredi non possent, in Siciliam trajecerunt; ubi, quum in Trojanos nonnullos incidissent qui huc usque erraverant, sese cum iis conjunxerunt, sedemque in occidua insulæ parte adepti sunt, ubi qui Sicanorum supererant domicilium collocârunt.

1. *Hic* expressed, because "he" is to a certain degree emphatic. 2. *Tractandam*—CL. 7. 3. *Ea* expressed leaves no doubt as to the subject

of *trahit*. 4. *Quæ proxima*—§ 34. 5. *Antiquus*—"ancient" as opposed to "modern." *Vetustus*—"ancient" as regards that to which *antiquus* may be applied. *Priscus* is applied to the first of a nation however ancient or modern, as, *Prisci Latini*, &c. 6. *Vi tempestatis*. *Magna vis telorum*—"A great shower of darts." 7. Obs. the tenses *innotuerit*, *fuisse*, *pervenisset*, *habuissent*, *posset*.

## CLXXXI.

Croesus in acie victum atque in urbe suâ primariâ obesum credere possis jam visurum fuisse quantum periculum sibi totique regno suo immineret; cedere tamen noluit, aliquam enim subsidii expectationem adhuc habuit, et videtur, quâ erat stultitiâ, se consolatus esse cogitando non ita facile Cyro fore arcem tam validam expugnare, sed hoc esse ejusmodi opus quod multo tempore et labore ei constaturum esset. "Is non sum," inquit, "qui clade terrear aut putem de me actum esse quod hoc tempore fugere necessarium invenerim; mihi fatum fuit proelio vinci, et tempus veniet quo ego populusque meus invicem victores simus." Socios suos rogavit ut copias suas pararent et sibi auxilio quam celerrimè venirent, se enim, eorum ope jam plus indigere quam antea unquam indiguisset, quem autem socium fidelem recusaturum esse venire paucis diebus citius quam primo expectatus esset? Socii, sive quod eum ob ipsius merita amârunt, sive quod regem cum quo bellum habebat, oderunt, vel quæcunque alia causa fuit, ejus causæ vehementer dediti fuerint, et, quamvis multi fuerint, discimus eos omnes ei fideles fuisse; sed tempus iis ad conveniendum præstitutum nimis longinquum fuerat.

1. *Credere* is sometimes parenthetic, sometimes not, as was observed under CXXXIX. 2. *Quâ stultitiâ erat*—(§ 23, c.) 3. *Cogitando*; a subst. noun would not be proper here. 4. *Is non sum*, &c., would be in the indirect form. "He said that he was not the man to be terrified by a defeat, or to think that it was all over with him because he had found it necessary on that occasion to flee; that it had been his fate to lose a battle, and that the time was coming when he and his people should in turn be victorious"—*Dixit se eum non esse qui clade terretur aut putaret de se actum esse quod eo tempore fugere necessarium invenisset; sibi fatum fuisse proelio vinci, et tempus venturum esse quo ipse populusque suus invicem victores essent*. 5. *Simus*—§§ 39, 40. 6. *Se enim*, &c.—§ 36, f. 7. *Indiguisset*—CXIX. 8. *Quem autem socium*—§ 38, d. 9. *Iis ad conveniendum*—"To them for assembling."

## CLXXXII.

Audacia, quâ Ducem Trimuliæ usum esse diximus, nequam fuit regi accepta, qui revera configendi cupidus erat,



et præcipue ingrata fuit uni ex consiliariis, rudi juveni, qui, quum ventum ad eum esset ut loqueretur, regi alia omnia suasit atque alter proposuerat. Dixit se nimium hostibus honorem, habituros esse, siquam iis præbuissem causam credendi, regem, cujus ipsum nomen terribile aliis omnibus esset, exercitumque cedere insuetum, quique vinci nesciret, posse tam dubios et timidos esse ut de re tam facile dijudicatu diu deliberarent. Hæc omnia Dux in bonam partem accepit; sed quum ignavia ei exprobrata esset, juveni dixit; "Fiat ergo cras certamen, et non mirabor si tu qui verbis tam audax es, primus fugias; Ego certe qui jam pugnavi dominum meum non deseram." Res omnino ut Dux prædixerat evenit.

1. *Configendi cupidus, or avidus certaminis, or intentus ad certamen.* *Intentus certamini*—"Intent upon the contest," implying that the person is already engaged in the contest; but, *Intentus ad certamen*—"Intent upon, or eager for, an engagement or contest," before it has been entered upon. 2. *Præcipue or imprimis*, but neither præsertim nor nominatim, as has been already observed. 3. *Rudi or imperito.* 4. *Quum ventum ad eum esset ut loqueretur, or quum tempus loquendi ei venisset, or quum ejus esset loqui.* Each inquired concerning himself, until it came to Judas's turn—*De se quisque rogavit, quoad ventum ad Judam est.* He spoke in his turn—*Invicem locutus est.* 5. *Regi alia omnia suasit atque*—XCII. 2. 6. *Dixit, &c.,* in the direct form will be "*We will,*" said he, "be paying too great an honour to the enemy, if we give them any reason to suppose that a king whose very name is terrible to all others, and an army unaccustomed to yield, and that knows not what it is to be conquered, can be so irresolute and timorous as to deliberate long on a matter so easy to be determined"—"*Nimium,*" inquit, "*honorem hostibus habelimus, siquam iis præbuerimus (fut. perf.) causam credendi regem, cujus ipsum nomen terribile aliis omnibus est, exercitumque, cedere insuetum, quique vinci nescit, posse tam dubios et timidos esse ut de re tam facili dijudicatu diu deliberent.*" 7. *Vinci nesciret*; distinguish from *Quid vinci esset nesciret*—LXXIV. With this use of "what" compare the similar use of "how" in CXXXVIII.

### CLXXXIII.

Inter eos quorum nomina in historia antiqua celebrantur, difficile esset invenire principem justiore sapientioreque quam Aratus Sicyonius fuit; nec potest quisquam nominari cujus de meritis major sit historicorum consensus. Quum Clinias, ejus pater, qui Sicyone regnavit, occisus esset imperiumque in potestatem tyranni venisset. Aratus alique multi in exilium acti eorumque bona novis possessoribus data sunt. Aratus eo tempore minor natu fuit quam qui patriam suam liberandam susciperet; sed statuit tales injurias non diu fore inultas. Quum ad eam pervenisset ætatem quâ

exercitui præesse posset, exules collectos in urbem noctu duxit; et quum tyrannus, qui et formidatus et odio habitus est, fugisset, Aratus edicendum curavit, omnes eos cives qui jam ad fidem redire vellent, in gratiam acceptum iri; quam enim esse eorum conditionem? aut quid aliud vi superatos potuisse facere nisi ei cedere cui resistere nequissent? Quo melius paci civitatis consuleret, unumquemque passus est ea retinere quæ tum possidebat; atque exulibus qui bonis suis exuti erant tantum pecuniæ dedit quanti prædia eorum valebant. Ita effecit ut omnibus satisfaceret; nec postea quidquam fecit quod ab hoc facto abhorreret.

1. *Quam Aratus Sicyonius fuit*, not *Arato Sicyonio*—(XXVII.); neither *Aratum Sicyonium* under the government of *invenire*. 2. *Meritis*. *Merita* means "Services, deserts, merits, good turns," as Cicero's services to the state were great—*Ciceronis merita in civitatem magna fuerunt*. *Ministerium*—"Service, the act of serving," as being derived from *minister*—"a servant;" as Diogenes rejected the services of others—*Diogenes ministerium aliorum rejectit*. *Opera*—"Service, work, labour," as, The state stood in need of Cicero's services—*Civitas Ciceronis operâ indigebat*. 3. *Eam* (§ 1) *ætatem quâ posset*—"That age at which he could." *Posset*—"He could command an army, but then he had not an army to command, therefore the subj.; *poterat* would imply not only that "he was able," but also that he actually had the command. 4. *Formidatus est*—"Was feared, dreaded." *Formido* is stronger than *timeo* or *metuo*, but it must be sometimes used for them, where they are defective. It does not follow the general rule, that verbs of "fearing" take after them *ne* for "that" and *ut* for "that not," but it may be used with *ut* or the inf. as may be convenient and agreeable to the sense. 5. *Quam enim, aut quid superatos, &c.*—§ 38, d. 6. *Quo melius*—§ 51, 2, b. 7. *Quanti prædia valebant*. This is not worth twopence—*Hoc non valet duobus assibus*. He sold the book at less than he had bought it for—*Librum minoris vendidit quam quanti emerat*. 8. *Abhorreret*, the predicate being in the rel. clause, See also LXVII. 1.

## CLXXXIV.

Patroclus, Menoetii et Stheneles filius, insignior non fuit virtute suâ, quamvis magna hæc esset, quam amore quem Achilles in eum habuit. Quum infeliciter ei adolescenti evenisset ut Elysonymum interficeret, ideoque ex Opunte, patris sui regno, fugere coactus esset, asylum invenit in aulâ Pelei, Phthiæ regis, qui cum filio suo Achille eum sub Chirone Centauro educavit; atque ita inter duos juvenes heroes (or heroes) contracta est arcta ea amicitia quæ adeo non longinquitate imminuta est, ut, quo diuturnior fuit, eo firmior fieret. Quum Achilles a bello recedere constituisset, Patroclus, impatiens victoriarum jam quotidie a Trojanis partarum, veniam ab amico suo, impetravit ut Thessalos ad certamen

duceret. Achilles armis suis eum instruxit, exceptâ hastâ quam retinuit, non quod amico suo usum ejus invideret, sed quia ea tam gravis erat ut nemo nisi ipse ea uti posset. Hic dolus omnino processit; Trojanosque aspectu crediti Achilles conterritos Patroclus ad ipsos urbis muros persequi potuit; et Homerus dicit, nisi Apollo sese interposuisset, futurum fuisse ut muri effringerentur. Morantem ut unum ex cæsis spoliaret, Hector instigante Apolline, adortus est, et post grave certamen interfecit.

1. *Sua* is necessary, *virtute* being contrasted with *amore* (Achilles)—XLIX. 4. 2. *Impatiens victoriarum*—CXLII. *Impatiens*, like all other compounds of a participle and the negative particle *in*, is always an adj. 3. *Quod . . . quia*—§ 53. 4. *Ea*—the subject of *erat* is better expressed. 5. *Processit*—VI. 2. 6. *Aspectus*—"Sight, look (appearance)." *Conspectus*—"Sight, view." The enemy had come in sight—*Hostes in conspectum venerant*. The enemy were in sight—*Hostes in conspectu fuerunt*. The enemy were out of sight—*Hostes extra conspectum fuerunt*. The enemy went out of sight—*Hostes e conspectu abierunt*. He has lost his sight—*Aspectum amisit*. He has lost sight of the English coast—*Conspectum Anglicæ oræ amisit*; *aspectum oræ* would mean "the look or aspect of the shore." He has lost sight (metaphorical) of his dignity—*Dignitatis suæ oblitus est*.

#### CLXXXV.

Claudii, quibus ortus est Tiberius imperator Romanus, diu insignes Romæ fuerant; et pro re singulari narratur, ex quo tempore Appius, gentis auctor, Romam migraverit, omnes, uno excepto, acerrimos fuisse patriciæ auctoritatis defensores, nec solum consiliis intemperatæ multitudinis restitisse, verum etiam conatos esse plebem omni jure privare. Mirum non est Tiberium, in tali natum familia atque in aulâ educatum, superbum et arrogantem fuisse; et, quamvis bene eum dignitas assumpta deceret, pauca in eo fuisse quæ parti maximæ populi placere possent. Sæpe quæsitum est quæ Augusto potuerit esse causa Tiberium, posthabito Germanico, adoptandi; atque inter eos qui Augusto nequaquam inimici sunt sed in rebus plerisque bene de moribus ejus existimant, non pauci inveniri possunt, qui dubitent num recte in hac re judicaverit, et dicant se persuasum habere, si eâ, quâ par esset, curâ virtutes et vitia hominis perpendisset, futurum fuisse ut alius eligeretur. Variæ tum fuerunt hominum suspiciones; et forsitan aliquid veri est in eo quod tres historici antiqui dicunt, eum de industria Tiberium, quem virum improbum esse sciret, legisse, veritum ne, si mortuo sibi melior successisset, memoria sui odiosa esset.

1. *Gens*—"A family, race, nation, tribe, clan." *Tribus*—"A tribe, divi-

alson of a people or nation (*gens*).” The Scythians were one of the wandering tribes—*Scythæ fuerunt una ex vagantibus (errantibus) gentibus*. The Benjamites were one of the Israelitish tribes—*Benjamitæ fuerunt una ex tribubus Israeliticis*. 2. *Omnes, uno excepto*. All without exception—*Omnes ad unum*. 3. *Restituisse*—X. 10. 4. *Quamvis*; compare *Quamvis magna hæc esset* in the previous exercise. 5. *Moribus*—LXXXVI. 5. “Character,” meaning *disposition, temper*, is made by *ingenium*; meaning *reputation*, it is *fama* or *existimatio*; when it is equivalent to *moral qualities*, it is *mores*; and when equivalent to *judgment, judicium*. *Mores* sometimes signifies “morals, moral character, &c.,” and sometimes “manners, outward behaviour;” but when opposed to *fama*, it always signifies “morals or moral character,” and *fama*—“reputation or report.” Bad morals—*Pravi* (not *mali*) *mores*. Good morals—*Probi* (not *boni*) *mores*. *Fama* is never used in the plural. 6. *Inveniri possunt*; neither the part. in *duo*, nor the fut. indic. would suit here—§ 43, g. 7. *In hac re*. Livy has related the fact, but has omitted the particulars (*circumstances*)—*Livius rem narravit, sed res circumstantes omisit*. 8. *Ed, quâ par esset, eund*—a form of expression previously remarked. 9. *Dicunt, nobis* not to be expressed because it is not emphatic; they do not “tell” us specially any more than others generally.

## CLXXXVI.

Sappho, celebris poetria Græca, in Lesbo insula, sexcentis circiter annis ante Christum, nata est. Cercolæ nupsit, de quo nihil amplius notum est, quam eum Sapphûs maritum et locupletissimum fuisse. Quum eum cito amisisset, et cum unicâ filiâ relicta esset, se musicæ et poeticæ dedit, quæ studia tam feliciter coluit, ut nonnulli veterum eam dignam putarent quæ Musa decima vocaretur. Si mores ejus ullâ ex parte tam puri fuissent quam ingenium ejus ex confesso magnum fuit, vel si a vitiis abstinuisset, quæ veteribus ipsis, in tanta eorum tolerantia nequitiae, condemnare visum est, nos delectare potuisset historiam ejus investigare; quæ tamen, ut res se habet, melius forsitan ignota est.

1. *Dedit*—LXII. 5. 2. *Quæ studia*—XXV. 1. 3. *In tanta tolerantia*—“Notwithstanding their so great toleration”—CVIII. 9. 4. *Nos delectare potuisset*—“It might have delighted us.” 5. *Melius*. “Better” is the adv. here; if it were made an adj., *melior*, the meaning would be “her history is a better one unknown,” instead of “it is better that it is unknown.”

## CLXXXVII.

Theodosio, imperatori Romano, qui cognomine Magnus appellatus est, successerunt duo filii sui, Arcadius et Honorius, qui imperium jam majus quam cui unus præesset, in eum et occiduum diviserunt, sedemque, ille Constantinopoli, hic Romæ, posuerunt. Zosimus, qui imperatorum Romanorum historiam eleganter Græcè scripsit, et sine quo, etsi de

ejus fide paucis in rebus non sine justa causa dubitatum est, nonnullæ eorum historiæ partes obscuræ aliæ autem penitus ignotæ fuissent, dicit, neque ulla est causa cur hic ei non credamus; quum nihil videamus quod eum adducere potuisset ut a veritate deflecteret, duos hosce juvenes, alterum effeminatum, alterum timidum, etsi purpuram gererent, nomine tantum imperatores fuisse, diuque coactos esse omnia Rufino et Stilihoni, legionum formidatarum ducibus, concedere.

1. *Zorismus, &c.*—§ 35. 2. *Elegantèr Græcè*—"Elegantly in Greek." 3. *Non sine justa causa*—"Not without good reason," stronger than *justâ causâ*. 4. *Nihil videamus quod, &c.*, "We see nothing which could have induced him." 5. *Veritate*, not *vero*, as formerly observed. 6. *Gererent*—"Wore, or bore;" *vero* would be absurd in such a case as this.

### CLXXXVIII.

Eorum quibus permissum est Athenis ut regis nomine fruerentur, ultimus Codrus fuit, quamcunque potestatem ejus successores revera habuerunt. Eo regnante, Dorienses, quibus totâ Peloponneso Græcâ nuper victoribus Heraclidæ jam sese junxerant, in fines Atticos invaserunt, quasi satis non haberent, nisi unamquamque civitatum bellicosarum prius subegissent. Oraculum Delphicum, quod consulere iis utile visum erat, successum iis promiserat eâ solum conditione ne regi Atheniensi nocerent. Haud multi dies fuerunt quum hoc ad Codri aures pervenit, qui statim, mutato suo regis ducive vestitu, sibi viam in hostium castra fecit, in quibus quum uni ex militibus insultasset, ab eo in feroci, quod secutum est, certamine est interfectus, id ipsum quod ab initio voluit. Quum Athenienses postridie misissent ad regis sui cadaver postulandum, Dorienses eorumque socii eò desperationis redacti sunt, ut non modo non bellum continuarent, sed abeundi cupiditate ne tempus quidem sumerent ad res suas pretiosissimas asportandas. Factum Codri qui se pro patria sua ita devovisset populus tantopere admiratus est, ut neminem dignum qui ei in regnum succederet existimaret, ideoque regium imperium aboleret anno ante Christum natum millesimo sexagesimo octavo, quadringentis quadraginta octo annis postquam constitutum est. "Ubinam," inquebant, "alium inveniemus qui officium suum tam bene sciat?"

1. *Athenis ut*, not *ut Athenis*; by the former order the permission is granted at Athens, by the latter the permission might be granted anywhere else to enjoy the title at Athens. 3. *Quamcunque habuerunt*—§ 23, b. 3. *Nisi prius*; *prius* in reference to the first of two things. *Nisi*—§ 60. 4. *Utile visum est*—LXI. 5. *Eâ*—"The, that"—§ 1. 6. *Haud multi dies fuerunt quum*—"There were not

many days when." This was not long in reaching Codrus's ears.—*Hoc citò ad Codri aures pervenit.* 7. *Suo regis*—§ 31. 8. *Sibi viam*, not *suam viam*; "he made way for himself." They were forced to give way—*Cedere coacti sunt.* They made head against the enemy—*Hosti restiterunt.* 9. *Id ipsum*—§ 65. 10. *Qui devovisset* and *Qui sciat*—§ 50, and LXII. 5. 11. *Officium*—LXI. 2.

## CLXXXIX.

Duo Joannis Baptistæ discipuli, missi a magistro suo, qui ipse ab Herode in castello Machærunthis inclusus erat, ad Jesum, anno secundo postquam munus publicum inierat, venerunt, quærentes utrum is esset qui esset venturus (quæ vulgata apud Judæos appellatio erat ad Messiam significandum), an alius adhuc esset expectandus. Mirum videri potest tale quid ab Joanne interrogatum esse, qui antea Messiam populo monstrasset et hoc sibi divinitus patefactum esse declarasset. Ad occurrendum huic difficultati, nonnulli existimarunt Joannem ita fecisse, non quod ipse dubitaret, sed ut discipulorum suorum fides confirmaretur; sed hæc explicatio nequaquam satisfacit, immò ab historiæ proposito abhorrere videtur. Varii conatus alii capti sunt ad reddendam hujus rei rationem, sed verisimillimum est Joannem expectasse ut e carcere ab Jesu liberaretur; et, quum inter alia audisset duodecim illiteratos piscatores ad evangelium prædicandum delectos, atque ad eam rem potestate miracula faciendi instructos esse, duosque parvi momenti homines e mortuis excitatos esse, quum permetteretur ut ipse inutilis et in carcere maneret, existimare coepisse se negligi, atque impatientem hos nuntios ad Jesum misisse.

1. *Utrum is esset qui esset venturus*—"Whether he was he who was to come"—§ 43 e. 2. *Quæ vulgata appellatio erat.* It would not do to say simply *vulgata appellatio*, without any word to regulate the case of *appellatio*—XXV. 1. *Esset expectandus*—"Was to be expected, must be looked for." 3. *Non quod . . . sed ut*—§ 53. 4. *Permitteretur ut ipse*; compare the syntax noticed in LVIII. 6.

## CXC.

Ennius, qui pater poesis Latinæ appellatus est, non quod revera antiquissimus poetarum Romanorum fuerit, sed quia primus aliquam scribendi elegantiam est consecutus, Rudiis in parvo Calabriæ oppido natus est, anno secundo Olympiadis centesimæ trigesimæ quintæ, qui congruit ad annum Romæ quingentesimum decimum quartum. Quinam parentes ejus fuerint aut quomodo teneros annos egerit, penitus ignotum est. Primum commemoratur ut centurio exercitus Romani

in bello Punico secundo; quo in munere major est ejus quam aliorum quorundam poetarum fama; ita enim se gessit, ut omnino probaretur Scipioni, cujus sub imperio bene notum est eum stipendia meruisse; et bene a Silio Italico aliisque audivit.

1. *Rudiis, in parvo oppido, or in Rudiis, parvo oppido*—XXXVII. 2. *Congruit ad.* His exploits corresponded with the greatness of his birth—*Res ejus gestas cum magnitudine generis congruerunt.* 3. *Primum commemoratur*—"He is mentioned or noticed for the first time." *Centurio exercitus Romani*—"A centurion of the Roman army;" in *exercitu Romano* here would change the meaning to "he is mentioned for the first time in the Roman army as a centurion," but perhaps he did not belong to the Roman army. So, They were the chief men in the state—*si fuerunt principes civitatis*; but *si fuerunt principes in civitate*—"Those chief men were in the state." *Potentissimi urbis ita dixerunt*—"The most powerful men in the city (lit. of the city) said so;" but, *Potentissimi in urbe ita dixerunt*—"The most powerful men said so in the city." 4. *Quo in munere*—"In which capacity, office." But such expressions as, "in the capacity of king, consul, &c.," are made simply *ut rex, ut consul, &c.* 5. *Probaretur, and stipendia meruisse* have already been noticed. 6. *Bene auditis*—"he has been well spoken of;" *Bene audire* has always this sense. not that of "to hear well." So, *Male audire*—"To be ill spoken of." He hears well, ill—*Bene, male auribus utitur.*

## CXCI.

Tantalus, ut in fabulis est, a diis ad convivia sua invitatus, eos vicissim, ut apud se pranderent, rogavit, seque iis daturum esse cibum tam bonum quam eorum ambrosia esset, talemque quali pauci ad huc unquam uti ausi essent. Venire consenserunt; et iis membra apposuit Pelopis; filii sui, quem ad eam rem interficiendum curaverat. Dii, quum scirent hanc Pelopis carnem esse, quæque cædis causæ esset, ab edendo abstinuerunt, exceptâ Cerere, quæ magis esuriebat quam ut quaereret quid paratum sit, et facti ignara partem humeri sinistri devoravit. Clotho, quæ potuisset prohibere quominus hoc accideret, membra collecta in purum vas conjicere jussa est; exiitque Pelops, vivus et integer, humero eburneo suppeditato.

1. *Apud se*—"With him, at his house;" *Secum*—"With him, in his company, but not necessarily at his house." 2. *Seque, &c.*—§ 36, f. He asked them to be quiet, or he would go away—*Eos rogavit ut quieti essent, aut se abiturum esse*; the *ut* does not affect the second clause, for it is not a request but an assertion. He exhorted them to fight bravely, for thus would they obtain glory—*Eos hortatus est ut fortiter pugnarent, ita enim gloriam eos adepturos esse.* 3. *Ambrosia* cannot be coupled by *quam* to *cibum bonum*, for in that case it would be under the government of *daturum esse*, which would alter the meaning—LII. 10. 4. *Esuriebat.* "Hungry" could not

be well made by any adj. here, there scarcely being an adj. to suit the syntax required.

## CXCII.

Viri maximi inter antiquos manuum laborem cum rebus civilibus conjungere solebant; et ita, præterquam quod semper aliquid utile quod facerent habebant, aliisque exemplum industriæ præbebant, fruebantur ipsi saluberrimâ relaxatione, quâ, quum publica eorum opera non postularetur, nihil eos privare poterat. Tempus subsecivum in occupationibus, alii aliis, pro sua quisque ingenio, agebant; sed agriculturæ plerique operam dedisse videntur. Quis est qui nesciat Gideonem inter Judæos a frumento deterendo, et Cinnamum inter Romanos ab arando, avocatos esse ut exercitiis præessent? atque ex iis quæ perfecerunt manifestum est priora eorum studia scientiæ armorum non obstitisse, aut effecisse ut minus possent artes imperandi exercere.

1. *Præterquam quod*—"Besides that"—X. 4. 2. *Tempus*, not *horas*, which properly means "hours"—*definite periods of time*. Similar to this is the use of *tempus* for "days," when *dies*, which, like *hora*, means *definite periods of time*, would be improper. 3. *Alii aliis*, &c. Sentences of this sort are elliptical as compared with the Eng. "Some in one employment, others in another"—§§ 29, 30. 4. *Pro suo quisque ingenio* with *agebat* to be supplied for the syntax. He found them dwelling in their *respective cities*—*Eos, suâ quemque in urbe, habitantes invenit*, lit. "He found them dwelling, each one (dwelling) in his own city." They went to their *respective houses*—*Suas quisque domos adierunt*, i.e. *Suas domos adierunt, suam quisque domum adiit*—§ 22, c. 5. *Scientiæ armorum*—"Skill in (of) arms;" *Scientiæ in armis*—"Skill or knowledge while in arms," but not "knowledge of arms"—CXC. 3.

## CXCIII.

Rhesus, Thraciæ rex, filius fuit Eionei, cui in regnum successit, unusque ex Musis, sed utrum Euterpes an Terpsichores, incertum est. Quum satis non haberet res varias in Europa gessisse, auxilio Trojanis, decimo obsidionis anno, profectus est; quumque notum ei esset, inter alia in quibus positum Trojæ fatum esset, oraculo veteri declaratum esse, urbem nunquam captum iri, si equi sui, quos poetæ dicunt fuisse summo candore insignes, nec potuisse cursu æquari, semel ex Xantho flumine bibissent, gramenque camporum Trojanorum gustassent, adventum suum celare, et Trojam noctu progredi constituit. Ulysses et Diomedes, tamen a Dolone, speculatore quem ceperant, certiores facti eum, jam positus in vicinia castris, tantum tenebras noctis ad rem perfi-



ciendam, expectare, extemplo ad locum accurrerunt, ejusque interfecti equis potiti sunt.

1. *Euterpes* and *Terpsichores* agreeing in case with *unius*; "the son of one of the Muses, but whether of *Euterpe* or of *Terpsichore* is uncertain." Obs. that *utrum* . . . *an* do not require the subst. verb to be expressed here. 2. *Satis haberet, positum est, oraculo* (abl.), *aequari, celare, rem.*

#### CXCIV.

Apostoli, qui adhibiti sunt ad jacienda ecclesiae Christianae fundamenta, fuerunt homines illiterati, humili loco orti; et quæri potest cur Jesus non potius homines elegerit, doctrinâ et eloquentiâ insignes, divitiisque et auctoritate præditos. Hujus rei ratio facile redditur. Si viris doctis munus mandatum esset, suspicio esse potuisset ea quæ docerent vel ab ipsis esse inventa vel aliunde collecta; vel saltem non omniâ quæ magistro suo tribuerent ab eo profecta esse, sed quædam esse mutata et addita. Ita Plato, doctus eloquensque Socratis discipulus, cum præceptoris sui sententiis suas commiscuisse creditur. Si apostoli ex divitibus potentibusque electi essent, facillimum est videre futurum fuisse ut evangelii successus auctoritati eorum, non veritati ipsius tribueretur; et præterea periculum fuisset ne vi propagaretur. Ita percipimus quam verè unus ex apostolis ipsis dixerit; thesaurum in vasis figlinis esse positum, ut manifestum esset ejus excellentiam ex Deo esse. Neque est cur miremur electum esse Judam Iscarioten; nihil enim certius est quam dominum nostrum ab initio pravum ejus ingenium nôsse atque in animo habuisse efficere ut vel vitia ejus adjuvarent ingens consilium ad quod perficiendum venerat.

1. *Adhibiti sunt, not occupati sunt*, as formerly explained. 2. *Ecclesia*—"The church—the body of people." *Templum*—"The church—the building." 3. *Fundamenta*. Both the Eng. and Lat. words are used literally or metaphorically, but in the latter case the Lat. word is generally plural. He laid the foundation of this house—*Jecit fundamentum hujus domus*. This laid the foundation of discords—*Hoc fundamenta discordiarum jecit*. 4. *Suspicio*—XLI. 5. *Aliunde*—"From other sources, quarters;" So, *Hinc, inde*, &c.—"From this, that source"—CXXVIII. 6. *Ex Deo esse*—"Was from God;" not *Dei esse*. 7. *Neque est cur miremur*—XLIII. 6., *Ingenium, vitia*.

#### CXCV.

Sparsa rumore Herodem, cui immeritò cognomen Magno fuit, in morbum incidisse ex quo verisimile non esset eum unquam convaliturum, Judæi omnia fecerunt quibus lætitiâ

suam testarentur; nec satis habentes discurrere et exultare, impetum, claro die, fecerunt in aquilam auream, quam super præcipua templi porta posuerat, dejectamque pedibus conculcarunt. Dubium non est quin hoc popularis sententiæ indicium magnopere ægritudinem ejus auxerit; sed revera morbus per se tam dirus fuit, ut Josephus qui eum accuratè describit, videatur ipse credidisse, et certe dicat alios qui afflatum divinum præ se ferrent, credidisse, immissum ei propter egregiam ejus impietatem esse. Qualibus is moribus fuerit, colligi ex iis potest quæ eum fecisse accepimus quum morbum esse mortiferum sensisset. Primores ex omnibus Judæa partibus in unum locum convocandos ibique detinendos curavit; ut, quum mortuus esset, omnes simul interimerentur, et ita Judæi mortem ejus plorare cogerentur. Quæ scelera Herodes patravit ejusmodi fuerunt quæ nunquam non suum secum supplicium trahant; eum mens sibi pravi conscia nunquam quiescere passa est; atque ita semper erit, quum homines violentos animi affectus non coercent, sed eos solam factorum suorum normam faciunt.

1. *Sparso rumore*, or, *famâ vulgatâ*. 2. *Verisimile*—LXIV. 3. 3. *Lætitia*—"Joy" manifested. *Gaudium*—"Joy" felt but not manifested or expressed. When they are contrasted, *lætitia* may be translated "exultation." 4. *Moribus*—CLXXXV. 5; and LXXXVI. 5.

## CXCVI.

Dicit Nepos tam honorificum fuisse Catoni Ennium Romam adduxisse quam amplissimum triumphum. Eum Romani semel intra urbem suam receptum haud minus benigne tractarunt, quam si natus inter se esset; dignumque judicaverunt qui civitate donaretur; quem honorem poeta ipse magnopere cupiisse, et acquisitum justo pretio æstimasse videtur. Eum natum in oppido nequaquam ob cultum insigni, educatione in castris quæ adhuc sine ulla luxuria erant, non est quod miremur Romæ in parva domo in Monte Aventino habitasse, cibo simplicissimo vescentem, habitu crassissimo vestitum, uniusque ancillæ ministerio contentum. Sunt tamen qui affirmant eum inter pocula sibi nimis liberè indulsisse, et nunquam nisi ebrius scribere coepisse. Cicero, qui magnis eum laudibus prosequitur, dicit eum amplius septuaginta annos vixisse; et duo mala quæ alii maxima ducerent, paupertatem ac senectutem, ei non modo non molesta fuisse, verum etiam voluptatem afferre visa esse.

1. *Quam amplissimum triumphum*—LII. 10. *Adduxisse Ennium Romam* stands as an acc. before *fuisse*. *Honorificum*, not *honestum*. 2. *Civi-*

tate donaretur. The magistrates conferred the freedom of the city on him—*Magistratus eum urbe donarunt*. 3. *Æstimo* has no meaning unless joined to a word of price; thus, I value the book—*Librum magni æstimo*; *æstimo librum* would be meaningless. So highly did they value their own liberty that—*Tanti* (not *tantopere*, with a verb of valuing) *suam libertatem æstimarunt ut*. 4. *Non est quod, or non est cur*. This phrase is capable of great variation; thus, *Nihil est quod miremur, nihil est cur miremur, non est causa cur miremur, nihil causa or nulla causa est cur miremur, non opus est nos mirari, non opus est ut miremur*. 5. *Eum natum, &c.*; compare the form of this sentence with that of the second in CLXXXV. 6. *Vestitum*, not *vestientem*. 7. *Ebrius*—"Drunk, intoxicated." *Ebriosus*—"Drunk, addicted to drink."

## CXC VII.

Titus Pomponius natus est VII. Id. Mart., centum et novem annis ante Christum natum, atque ita iis quibus verus rerum Romanarum ordo est notus, manifestum est eum tribus annis natu majorem, quam Ciceronem ejus amicum, fuisse. Quum tempore viveret quo videbat esse Romæ periculosum esse, cum magnis, quas habebat, fortunis Athenas migravit, ubi linguæ Græcæ tantam scientiam consecutus est, ut non solum in confesso esset eum peregrinorum omnium elegantissimè eâ scribere et loqui, verum etiam Atheniensibus sui temporis a quibusdam præferretur, atque Atticus appellaretur, quo nomine vulgo notus est nobis, qui interdum contenti sumus, etsi totum non sciamus. Pro doctrinæ suæ documento, opera complura scripsit, quæ omnia perisse magnopere dolendum est; atque, id quod mirum videri potest, ex multis ejus ad Ciceronem epistolis, ne una quidem exstat, etsi Ciceronis sunt servatæ. Quum Romam redisset, nulli factionum quæ tum valebant sese junxit, sed omnibus placere nisus est; et vix ullus in urbe vir insignis fuit qui sollicitus non esset ut sibi ejus amicitiam conciliaret.

1. *Tempore*—CLXXII. 2. *In confesso esset*—"It was acknowledged." 3. *Eâ scribere et loqui*—"To write and speak in it." 4. *Omnium peregrinorum*; obs. the Eng. idiom. 5. *Temporis*—CXCII. 2. *Etsi non*—§ 60. 6. *Ad Ciceronem epistolis*. He sent a letter by me to his brother—*Epistolam mihi ad fratrem suum dedit*. 7. *Vix ullus in urbe vir insignis fuit*; compare with CXC. 3.

## CXC VIII.

Quum dies decimus quartus mensis Nisanis, id est, dies quartus ante Nonas Apriles, venisset, quo tempore agnus Paschalis mactandus et comedendus fuit, Petrus et Joannes ex Jesu quæsierunt ubi et quomodo festum parari vellet, bene enim sciebant eum nullos greges aut armenta de suo habere,

nec pecuniam quâ animal necessarium emeret. Etiam si incolarum urbis mos erat, iis qui talibus temporibus rure venerunt omnia quæ ad solenne necessaria erant suppeditare, discipuli noluerunt quidquam facere de quo magistri sui præcepta non haberent. Jesus dixit, quum semel in urbe essent, occurrurum iis esse hominem urceum aquæ ferentem, eosque oportere eum in domum ejus sequi, quam de industria instructam inventuri essent. Possemus optare ut nomen hominis, cui tantopere fautum est, sciremus; hoc tamen nobis denegatur, sed verisimile est eum fuisse hominem qui servatorem nostrum amaret, et jure credi potest eum domum suam instruxisse, ignarum quinam hospites sui futuri essent. Hæc Jesu verba discipulis non potuerunt non persuadere eum omnia scire; et quum rem unamquamque sicut is prædixerat invenissent, sine dubio inde didicerunt, jussa ejus sequi rectè ducere. Memorabili hæc nocte sacramentum cœnæ institutum est.

1. *Dies decimus quartus mensis Nisanis.* The Jewish month was not divided like the Roman, and accordingly the method of expressing a date is different. 2. *De suo*; obs. the idiom. *Hoc de suo fecit*—"He did this at his own expense, or lit. out of his own property;" the Lat. for the same Eng. may also be *Hoc suo sumptu fecit*. I will give you this book of mine—*Hoc librum meum tibi dabo*. He took away a book of mine—*Librum de meis* (from my books) *abripuit*. He ascribed this to no merit of his own—*Hoc nulli merito suo attribuit*. This world of ours—*Hic noster mundus*. 3. *Etiam si*—CVIII. 9. 4. *De quo*—"For, concerning which." 5. *Occurrurum iis esse hominem*; obs. the difference of idiom between the Lat. and Eng. with this verb. As I was entering the city I met a man—*Mihi urbem ingredienti occurrit* (or *obvenit*) *homo*. You and I met—*Ego et tu occurrimus*. By the Eng., the principal person, as it were, meets the subordinate; by the Lat., the subordinate is made to meet the principal. 6. *Oportere*—"Were to follow"—expressing a duty. 7. *Rem unamquamque*—"Every single, individual circumstance"—more precise than *Rem omnem*.

### CXCIX.

Veneti diu cum Turcis foedere conjuncti fuerant, atque inter civitates quarum fines peragraverant, Hungaria fuit, cujus ex regibus duos deinceps, Uladislaum et Hunniadem, interfecerant, vel ita vulneraverant ut postea nunquam ambularent sed paucis post diebus quam domum lati sunt morerentur. Idem hi Veneti, quum a sociis, quos tam strenuè adjuverant, impugnati essent, invenissentque jam in eo esse ut consumerentur, auxilium ab Hungaris petere coacti sunt. Quid legati eorum habuerint quod pro se dicerent, in præsentia nobis in animo non est quærere; sed Corvinus, qui Hungariæ

rex jam erat, iis ita respondit; "Nisi vox vestra unde veneritis ostenderet, et nisi vestitum quoque vestrum agnoscerem, vix credere possem vos esse legatos e Venetia missos qui supplices hic essetis. Quæ vobis causa est expectandi ut postulationi vestræ concedatur? et si sperare non potestis vos ea quæ cupitis adepturos, mihi permitti oportet ut de sapientia vestra, qui talem in legationem veneritis, dubitem. Potestne fieri ut obliti sitis vos huic regno calamitatem omnium quas unquam passum est gravissimam atque ex quâ sese nondum recepit, intulisse?"

1. *Postea*—"After, afterwards." *Postquam*—"After the time that." 2. *Jam in eo esse ut consumerentur*—"That they were on the point of being consumed." *In eo esse* is an *impersonal* expression—"it was in that, &c." "Ready" = "prepared," is *paratus*. 3. *In legationem veneritis*. To go on an expedition—*In expeditionem ire*. 4. *Ut obliti sitis*—"That you have forgotten." 5. *Ex quâ sese recepit*. He cannot recover from this disease—*Ex hoc morbo convalescere non potest*.

## CC.

Gratiæ, sive, ut Græcè appellantur, Charites, vulgo dicebantur numero tres fuisse, Aglaia, Thalia, et Euphrosyne; quanquam scriptores quidam duas tantum memorant, alique quatuor enumerant, quas easdem ducunt ac quatuor anni tempestates. In Borussia est opus sculptile antiquum, in quo quatuor exhibentur; sed artifex, ut verisimile est, timens ne ignorantiae accusaretur ab iis qui alteri numero assueti essent, quartam, quæ velata est, seorsim a tribus aliis posuit. In multis Græciæ partibus, templa Gratiis ædificata sunt; sed interdum earum cultus cum novem Musarum Cupidinisque conjunctus est, nec rarè earum simulacra in templis Mercurii posita sunt, ad ostendendum eloquentiam auxilio earum indigere; nec fieri potest ut aliam ullam ob causam Suada, dea persuasionis, inter eas nonnunquam numerata sit. Festa multa earum honoris causâ celebrata sunt, præsertim per ver, quod iis æque ac Veneri sacrum fuit. Beneficiis factisque animi grati præfuerunt, et sibi addictos venustate morum et hilaritate adornare creditæ sunt. Plerumque pinguntur ut tres pulchræ virgines, manu tenentes alia aliam, et gerentes quæque rosam, ramulum lauri, aut aleam, et sæpe saltantes conspiciuntur.

1. *Gratia, sive Charites*. When a person or persons are known thus under two names, the proper word for "or" is *sive* or *seu*. *Scipio, sive Africanus*—"Scipio, or Africanus," the same person known under two names. *Scipio, aut (vel) Africanus*—"Scipio (one person), or Afri-

canus (another)." 2. *Easdem ac tempestates* (acc.)—§ 27. 3. *Cum Musarum*—§ 19. 4. *Tenentes, alia aliam; gerentes, quæque rosam*—CXCII. 3, 4.

## CCI.

Penelope, princeps Græca, eximiæ pulchritudinis, filia Icarii et Polycastes fuit. Quum ejus pater ludos quosdam, pro experimento consilii et fortitudinis procorum a quibus ea vexabatur, instituisset, Ulysses victor fuit eamque in matrimonium adeptus est. Exorto bello Trojano, eam coactus est relinquere; et discedens pactus est, ut, si ipse in id tempus non redisset quo filius suus Telemachus rerum potiri posset, ea regnum juveni traderet, existimaretque sibi licere alii viro nubere. Postquam viginti anni, sine nuncio de Ulysse, præterierunt, Penelope (*dat.*) institerunt propinqui ut omnem abjiceret spem eum unquam rediturum, et tandem efflagitationibus alicujus eorum concederet qui tam frequentes ad eam petendam venissent, quique omnes ejus amore digni essent. Penelope, ut tempus traheret, variis usa est artibus, quarum una tam bene est nota ut in proverbium venerit; sed precibus tandem victa, consensit uxor ejus fieri qui primus sagittam ex Ulyssis arcu per statum annulorum suspensorum numerum misisset. Hoc perfecit quidam mendici vestitu indutus; et ipse fuit Ulysses qui modo redierat.

1. *Pactus est. It was stipulated that the cities should enjoy their liberty*—*Pactum est ut civitates libertate fruerentur.* 2. *Consensit fieri*—§ 51, c.

## CCII.

Herodes Antipas, tetrarcha Galilææ, quum ad Philippum fratrem suum visendum ivisset, vehementi captus est amore Herodiadis ejus uxoris, cui facile persuasum est ut maritum suum desereret. Jam antè Herodes uni ex filiabus Aretæ, Arabiæ regis, matrimonio conjunctus erat; eamque repudiare non dubitavit, ut locum alteri faceret. Joannes Baptistes, audaciâ quæ eum ut Dei nuncium decebat, eos acriter objurgavit; quod Herodi adeo displicuit, ut eum in carcerem conjiceret; et tanto magis incensa est Herodias, ut sanguinem ejus sitiret. Herodes die suo natali primores ad coenam invitaverat; et Salome, Herodiadis filia ex priori marito, ingressa, Herodi tam placuit saltando, ut eam juberet quidquid vellet a se petere, juraretque, si dimidiam regni sui partem postulasset, se statim daturum ei esse. Salome, priusquam deligeret, egressa est matremque suam consuluit; et reversa

rogavit ut caput Joannis Baptistæ sibi in catino afferretur. Jam Herodes propter temerarium promissum suum dolore affectus est, sed putavit se fidem præstare debere; et Salome acceptum viri innocentis caput ad matrem suam tulit, quæ, mirabile dictu, oculos suos crudeli spectaculo pavit. Quidam de horrido facto loquens dicit, Joannis mortem, quo turpior ejus interfectoribus fuerit, eo honestiorem ipsi fuisse.

1. *Visendem.* He came to visit me—*Mei visendi causâ venit*, or *ad me visendum venit*. He came to visit them—*Eos visendi causâ venit*. 2. *Dis suo natali*, or simply *suo natali*. 3. *Vellet*—subj., the clause being indirect—§ 23, b. 4. *Sibi*—"To her" for her benefit or pleasure; *ad se* would be merely "to her"—"to the place where she was." 5. *Quo turpior*—§ 63. 6. *Ipsi*—"Himself" i. e., John the Baptist. *Sibi* would refer to the person speaking of the deed.

## CCIII.

Jeremias, vates ex familia sacerdotali, Anathothæ in urbe Benjaminitarum natus est. Annis circiter sexcentis ante Christum natum floruit, et quadraginta unum annos, regnantibus Josia, Jehoiakimo, et Zedekia, vaticinatus est. Primò vaticinia sua verbis edere satis habuit; sed anno quarto regni Jehoiakimi ea scribere coepit, ad quam rem operâ Baruchi usus est, cui etiam ea dedit palam in templo recitanda, postquam ipse in carcere-inclusus est. Quum vaticinia ejus, quæ omnia ad Judæorum peccata et supplicium quod secuturum esset respiciebant, Jehoiakimo ostensa essent, hicce princeps, postquam tres quatuorve paginæ ei lectæ sunt, librum scalpro librario sectum in ignem conjecit; sed Jeremias eas ipsas minas in alio volumine scribere et alias multas iis adjicere jussus est. Audacia quâ in nequitiam populi invectus est ejus odium acerbissimum excitavit; et purpurati Zedekiae, qui jam rex erat, indignantes, eum, quamvis in carcerem conjectus esset, Judæis scelera adhuc exprobrare et quæ miseræ iis impenderent, prædicere, eum in fossam profundam, luti plenam, detruserunt; quod fecerunt consentiente rege, cui, etsi persuasus habebat innocentem eum esse, ea fortitudo non fuit ut eum defenderet.

1. *Anathothæ, in urbe*—CXO. 2. *Dedit recitanda*, not *legenda*—CI. 7; but *lego* in the next sentence, as formerly explained. 3. *Respiciabant*—XCVI. 6. 4. *Secuturum esset*, upon the authority of the prophecies, therefore indirect. 5. *Invectus est*. They inveighed against him—*In eum inveci sunt*.

## CCIV.

Jeremias, in foveam lutosam, ut diximus, demissus, cito suffocatus esset, aut fame pereundum ei fuisset, nisi Æthiops

quidam, nomine Ebed-Melechus, fuisset, qui a rege veniam impetravit ut eum extraheret. Postea in carcere usque eo est detentus, quoad urbs a Babylonis capta est; quum Nebuzaradanus, eorum dux, cui a principe suo mandatum erat ut eum benignè tractaret, liberato optionem fecit ut vel secum Babylonem iret, vel in Judæa cum cætero populo maneret. Ex Jeremiæ moribus facile conjici posset, etiamsi hæc historiæ pars ignota esset, utrum consilium secutus sit; et parum necessarium est adjicere eum inter ærumnas domi vivere maluisse, in animo habentem popularium suorum saluti prospicere, nec sinere eos officii sui oblivisci. Quum Judæi regis Babylonis furorem pertimescentes, in Ægyptum fugere cogitarent, Jeremias summa ope nisus est ut eos prohiberet; sed tam perversi fuerunt ut non solum ipsi eò irent, verum etiam eum et Baruchum unà secum ferrent. Hic Jeremiam, fidelitate solita utentem, et nemini qui malè agebat, parcentem, Judæi, quum ejus vituperationes amplius ferre non possent, dicuntur lapidibus obrutum necasse, anno mundi ter millesimo quadringentesimo quadragésimo septimo.

1. *Uques eò quoad*—"Up till, all along till." 2. *Cætero* not having the nom. masc., "The rest of the people murmured," may be—*Cætera pars populì murmuravit*. The rest of the common people murmured—*Cætera plebs murmuravit*. 3. *Etiamsi*—CXCVII. 4. *Popularium*, not *civium*—XXXVII. 4. 5. *Sinere* and *Pati* take the inf., *Permitto* takes ut with subj. 6. *Obrutum*, or *co-opertum*. 7. *Amplius*, or *jam*, not *diutius*, because there is no comparison instituted.

## CCV.

Trajanus, morbo in Syria correptus, Hadrianum ibi cum copiis reliquit; et vix ad Ciliciam pervenerat, quum mortuus est, magno cum dolore Romanorum omnium, qui credebant post Augusti tempora imperatorem nullum tam bonum fuisse, et, quicumque proximus futurus esset, se posthac neminem ei parem visuros. Hadrianus, quum exercitibus præesset, putavit sibi quasi jus esse succedendi; et sunt qui dicant Plotinam, Trajani viduam, testamentum finxisse, in quo Hadrianus Trajani hæres sit institutus. Sive verum hoc est, sive non, Hadrianus maxime idoneus judicatus est qui succederet, et bonus factus est imperator, nisi quod aliquanto propensior ad crudelitatem fuit. Doctrina magna, ut temporibus illis, præditus fuit, primò enim ob ignorantiam irrisus, tam diligenter studuit, ut unus ex seculi sui doctissimis evaderet. Moriens pulchros illos scripsit de animo versus, qui tanta in admiratione habiti sunt, quosque plures ex nostratibus poetis



Anglicè vertere operæ pretium duxerunt. Hic, ut alii imperatores ethnici, Christianos malè tractavit; ea tamen liberalitas ei quondam fuit, ut duos ex iis audiret; qui causam suam tam peritè egerunt, ut, quanquam in superstitionibus suis permansit, eos cum laude dimitteret, polliceretur se supplicia quæ Christiani paterentur, mitigaturum, diceretque se senatui auctorem fore ut Jesus in deos Romanos referretur. Ei tamen dictum est hanc esse impietatem quam tentare non deberet; Jesu enim sine æmulo regnandum esse.

1. *Parè*—"Like, equal to"—LXXXVIII. 2. 2. *Aliquanto propensior*—CXI. 3. 3. *Ut illis temporibus*. The consul was too strict for those times—*Consul severior fuit quam pro* (after the comparative) *illis temporibus*—§ 59. 4. *Moriens, moriturus, or moribundus*. 5. *Auctorem* is not only one who proposes, first mentions, or produces anything, but also one who confirms and ratifies a thing, and thereby makes it take effect; as, The people enact, the senate ratifies—*Populus jubet, senatus est auctor*.

## CCVI.

Elis, Judæorum pontifex maximus et judex, Ithamaro, quarto Aaronis filio, ortus est, populumque regere coepit, anno mundi bis millesimo octingentesimo quadragésimo octavo. Quomodo sacerdotium adeptus sit, aut quando hæcè dignitas ex Eleazari domo, in qua primò est constituta, ad Ithamari translata sit, haud ita manifestum est; sed jure credi potest delictum aliquod ab Eleazari filiis commissum esse, quod Deum provocaverit ut eos insigni hoc honore privaret. Elis ipse vir bonus atque in magnâ apud Judæos existimatione fuit; sed duo ejus filii, Hophnis et Phineas, se tam male gesserunt ut eorum facta non solum Deo displicerent, verum etiam religionem in contemptionem publicam adducerent. Quum Elis hosce juvenes, quamvis eorum nequitiam sciret, indulgenter tractasset, vates, cujus nomen historicus sacer non commemoravit, ad eum missus est, qui ei animum ingratum et negligentiam exprobraret, et quæ pœna esset sequutura, prædiceret. Eadem postea ei ab adolescente Samuele dicta sunt, et quum audivisset exercitum Judaicum a Philistæis profigatum, filios suos interfectos, et arcam Dei captam esse, e sede delapsus est, fractisque cervicibus, interiit, annos nonaginta octo pubens, quum magistratus summus per spatium quadraginta annorum fuisset.

1. *Domo*—LV. 5. *Haud ita manifestum, i.e., it is hardly evident at all. Neither valde (or admodum) manifestum, nor manifestissimum would give the proper meaning.* 2. *In magnâ existimatione, quamvis, exprobraret, adolescente.*

## CCVII.

Daniel vates in impiam Babylonem captivus abductus erat, unâ cum quibusdam ex amicis suis, inter quos erant ii quibus Babylone indita sunt nomina Chaldaica, Sidraco, Misaco, et Abednegoni. Daniel, quum Dei auxilio regi somnium, quod eum dormientem magnopere sollicitaverat, quod tamen recordari vigilans non potuit, unâ cum ejus interpretatione narrasset, toti provinciæ præpositus est, et tres ejus socii ad amplos honores sunt provecti. Primores Babylonii tamen invidis oculis eos conspexerunt, eorumque perdendorum occasionem quæsierunt. Quum igitur hi Israelitæ, honoris Dei sui studio, recusassent statuam auream adorare, quam rex omnes venerari jusserat, poenâ iis qui non paruisent constitutâ, ut in fornacem ardentem conjicerentur, accusati sunt quod legem regiam violassent, atque ut crudele supplicium subirent condemnati sunt. Sed, ut omnes scitis, angelus de cœlo descendit et divinitus prohibuit quominus eos flammæ læderent.

1. *Abductus erat*—"Had been carried or led away," *ductus erat* would be too weak, meaning only that "He was led as a prisoner." So we say, "He is gone," which is equivalent to "He is gone away"—*Abiit*. 2. *In impiam Babylonem*. A preposition must be used with the name of a town when there is an adj. with it, as here. 3. *Indita sunt*—VI. 3. 4. *Dei auxilio*, it being all owing to God; *Deo adjuvante* would imply that Daniel accomplished the principal part himself, deriving only some assistance from God. 5. *Somnium narrare*—"To tell another person's dream." *Somnium dicere*—"To tell one's own dream." 6. *Vexo*—"To tease, annoy, harass." *Turbo*—"To put in confusion." *Sollicito*—"To trouble one's mind." 7. *Tamen*. "But" cannot be made by *sed* here, because *quod* must have the first place in the clause. 8. *Vigilans*, or *experrectus*. 9. *Ejus*, before interpretations, might be omitted. *Somnium narrasset et simul interpretatus esset* would do very well. 10. *Provincia præpositus*, or *Præfectus imperio totius provinciæ*, or *Gubernator (rector) totius provinciæ factus est*, or *Procurator provinciæ*, &c. 11. *Invidis*—"Jealous," meaning here not "suspicious," but "envious." 12. *Poenâ iis qui non paruisent constitutâ*, &c., or *Quod si quis (or quicumque) non fecisset, eum conjectum iri*, or *Nisi vellent in ardentem fornacem conjici*, or *Ne conjicerentur*, or *Eos qui nollent imaginem colere conjectum iri*. I was ordered to be silent on pain of being expelled—*Tacere jussus sum poenâ propositâ ut nisi paruissem expellerer*. 13. *Recusassent*. *Recuso* is followed by *quominus* when there is a change of person; as, I have no objection to their coming—*Non recuso quominus veniant*. 14. *Quominus flammæ*—IV. 6.

## CCVIII.

Miracula, alia super alia, a Mose prius facta erant, quam recordi Ægypti regi persuaderi potuit ut Israelitas abire sine-ret; et simul atque consenserat ut discederent, sumpto in-

genti exercitu, eos ad castra eorum, quæ ad mare erant, secutus est. Territi fugitivi jam querendi initium fecerunt, et tam ingrati fuerunt ut Mosem objurgarent dicerentque se debuisse omitti, ut Ægyptiis servirent. Moses Deum precatus est ut liberarentur, et, precibus ejus auditis, jussus est virgam suam sumere et super aquas porrigere. Quo facto, recedentes fluctus tutum Israelitis transitum præbuerunt iisque pro munimento utrinque fuerunt. Per noctem exercitus Israeliticus et Ægyptius distenti sunt, ex eo quod nubes alteri lucem suppeditabat, in alterum autem tenebras effundebat. Pharo copias suas in recens factam viam duxit, sed non longè progressus erat quum timere coepit et pedem libenter retulisset. Hoc scitis eum non potuisse efficere, quum non ejus causâ alveus siccus factus esset.

1. *Miracula, alia super alia, or Miracula super miracula.* 2. *Vecors, amens, demens, or stolidus.* 3. *Abire sineret, or simply dimitteret.* 4. *Consenserat ut—§ 51, e.* 5. *Sumpto ingenti exercitu, or Ducens ingentem exercitum, or Cum ingenti exercitu, without any verb for "taking."* 6. *Querendi initium fecerunt, or Queri cœperunt.* 7. *Ingrati.* There are no such words as *gratitudo* or *ingratitudo*, except as forgeries of modern times. 8. *Objurgarent—LIII.* 9. *Porrigere, extendere, intendere, or protendere.* 10. *Recens.* There is no authority for *recenter*. Wild beasts recently caught—*Fera recens captæ.* 11. *Pareo—"To obey, be subject to."* *Servio—"To obey as a slave, to be in a state of servitude."*

## CCIX.

Zacharias, inter solitum suum sacerdotis munus fungendum, in templum ad thus accendendum iverat, quum populus extra sanctum locum precaretur. Subitò angelum vidit, stantem ad dexteram aræ partem, quod eum magnopere terruit, quoad benevolus spiritus verbis benignis et gratulabundis eum allocutus est, ei confirmans precem ejus esse auditam et Elizabetham ejus uxorem habituram esse filium qui Joannes esset nominandus. Pro signo prædictum eventurum esse, et pro poenâ quod dubitaverat, redditus est elinguis, dictumque ei est, eum, nisi post infantem natum, vocem non recuperaturum. Quum igitur ad populum prodiiisset, qui eum tamdiu moratum esse mirabatur, ne verbum quidem edere potuit, sed innuendo cum eo communicare coactus est. Quum ei lingua soluta esset, in laudem Dei qui tantam sibi misericordiam tribuisset, effusus est, prædixitque quantus honor infantem ut Messiae prænuncium maneret. Quæcunque de Zacharia et Elizabetha apud Lucam legimus, qui solus Evangelistarum de iis mentionem facit, nos adducunt ut eorum mores admiremur; quum alter esset sacerdos munere

suo dignus, altera autem æque atque ipse sincera impigraque pietate insignis esset; nec dubitare possumus quin vixerint mortuique sint fidem habentes ei ad quem nunciandum filius eorum venit.

1. *Ad dexteram partem*—"On, i.e., at the right side." 2. *Pro signo*. As a proof of his learning, he wrote several works—*Pro doctrinæ suæ documento opera complura scripsit*. 3. *Tribuisset*, the sentiment of Zacharias, not of the historian.

## CCX.

Josephus ab Jacobo patre suo præcipuè dilectus fuit, quippe qui ejus caræ Rachelis filius natu maximus esset. Iniquus hicce amor et somnium quod ipse fratribus suis narravit, quo significatum est eum illis majorem futurum esse, fecerunt ut in eorum invidiam odiumque veniret. Quondam quum greges suos pascere ad se venientem vidissent, ejus occidendi consilium ceperunt. Quum tamen dissuasum iis esset ne sanguinem ejus funderent, eum veste versicolori quam ei pater (suus) dederat, exuerunt atque in foveam detruserunt; sed quum mercatores nonnullos vidissent, qui eo tempore, ducente Deo, præteribant, extractum iis vendiderunt, quasi servus esset aut unum ex animalibus quæ pascebant. Ut patrem suum de vero ejus fato celarent, ejus vestem sanguine macularunt, et ad senem portarunt, qui inde collegit filium suum a ferâ esse devoratum. Josephus interim in Ægyptum asportatus et Potiphari, uni ex Pharaonis præfectis, venditus est. Hic Jehova omnia quæ ille fecit, fortunavit; et Potiphar, quum bona sua ei tutò committi posse invenisset, toti domui suæ eum præposuit. Felicitas tamen ejus aliquamdiu interrupta est, nam Potipharis uxor eum in scelus perducere est conata; et Josephus, potiusquam peccatum consultò admitteret, festinanter ab ea aufugit. Hanc sui contemptionem indignè ferens, eum falsò apud maritum suum accusavit, qui malè moratæ uxori suæ nimis facile credens, Josephum in carcerem conjecit.

1. *A patre præcipuè* (or *præ omnibus*) *dilectus fuit*, or *Apud patrem præcipuè gratior fuit*, or *Patri omnium carissimus fuit*. "The" is emphatic before "favourite," as it is in such a sentence as the following:—This is the great precept—*Hoc est maximum præceptum*, or *Hoc præceptum est maximum omnium*. 2. *Iniquus*. He was partial to me—*Mihi favit*, or *Mihi præcipuè favit*. 3. *Quo significatum est*, and *fecerunt ut*, &c., idioms formerly observed—XLIII. 7. 4. *Asportatus* or *abductus*. 5. *Interrupta est*. *Interpello* signifies properly "to interrupt one while speaking," but it is sometimes used otherwise, as, *Opus interpellare*. 6. *Potiusquam*—§ 58. *Consultò*, *dedidit operâ*, or *de industriâ*.

## CCXI.

Initio anni secundi postquam Jesus in publicum prodiit, hominem lepris affectum sanavit, jussitque ire et se sacerdotibus ostendere, quorum testimonio declarari posset eum revera curatum esse, sed eum vetuit cuiquam aperire quis esset qui eum in valetudinem restituisset. Homo, tamen, vel ex lætitia quod sanus factus esset, vel ut animum gratum in Jesum testaretur, curationem adeo non celavit, ut sibi temperare non posset quin eam passim divulgaret; unde effectum est ut majores hominum turbæ quam huc usque convenerant, ad Jesum confluerent, cupientes eum videre qui verbo morbis mederetur qui omnem medicorum scientiam superassent. Ab hoc tempore non potuit urbem ullam ingredi, quin ad eum ægroti omnis generis afferrentur. Inter curationes quarum memoria prodita est, insignis est curatio paralytici; qui aliter non potuit, quæ erat turba, in ejus conspectu collocari, quam in lecto suo e domus fastigio demissus; ita autem ædificatæ sunt domus Judaicæ, ut hoc sine multa difficultate fieri posset.

1. *Hominem lepris affectum sanavit*—"Cured or healed a man affected with the leprosy." 2. *Temperare* governs the dat. when it signifies "to restrain, or check," as, I could scarcely keep from striking him—*Vix mihi temperare potui quin eum percuterem*; but when it signifies "to govern, rule," it governs the acc. 3. *Unde effectum est ut; curatio paralytici; quæ erat turba*. 4. *Fastigium* is here *literal*; it is also used *metaphorically*, as, He has reached the top of his profession—*Ad artis suæ fastigium pervenit*. The top of the mountain—*Summus mons*.

## CCXII.

Quum proximâ Hebdomade dixerimus quæ ars a Paralytici amicis adhibita sit, adjiciendum nobis nunc est, Jesum fidem eorum admirantem qui sibi ægrotum ita obtulissent, ejus miseritum esse, et priusquam eum morbo corporeo liberaret, palam declarasse peccata remissa ei esse. Qui Phariseorum aderant, quum Christi divinitatem ignorarent, secum putarunt, etsi timebant eloqui, eum qui sibi hoc sumeret ut homini peccata condonaret, id sibi arroganter vindicare quod recte credebant esse Dei solius facere. Jesus, qui omnia sciebat quæ in animis eorum versabantur, iis ostendit non posse eos se de cogitationibus suis celare, eosque interrogavit utrum peccato ignoscere an poenam quam peccatum attulisset remove facilius esset. Non potuerunt Pharisei non sentire hæc duo revera unum idemque esse; nec debuerunt silentium obstinatum tenere sed ingenuè confiteri eum qui in se habeat potes-

tatem hoc faciendi, illud quoque facere posse. Paralyticus, simul ac Domini nostri imperium efficax accepit, surrexit, lectum sustulit, ambulavitque, cum ingenti admiratione et gaudio cæteri populi, qui, quum oculis suis quæ vis in Christi imperio esset, vidisset, persuasum etiam habuit verum id esse quod is declaraverat.

1. *Palam, remissa esse, condonaret, ignoscere, celare, nec tenere sed confiteri.*
2. *Qui Phariseorum aderant, putarunt—"Those of the Pharisees who were present thought."*
3. *Persuasum habuit—"Were satisfied, convinced."*
- He was satisfied (*held it enough*) with harassing them—*Satis habuit eos vexare*—XXXVI. 4.

## CCXIII.

Barnabas, unus ex Domini nostri discipulis, et Pauli apostoli comes, ex unâ e tribubus Judaicis ortus, sed in Cypro insulâ natus est. Genere non humili fuisse divitiasque habuisse videtur; et primus bona sua vendidit atque Apostolorum arbitrio pretium permisit. Quum Hierosolymis notum esset, multos esse Antiochiæ qui religionem Christianam amplexi essent, eorumque numerum indies crescere, apostoli Barnabam delegerunt ut maximè idoneum qui eo, ad discipulos confirmandos, mitteretur; et vix dubitari potest quin iis inter causas eum præferendi, hæc fuerit, quod linguæ Græcæ, quâ homines in ea urbe loquebantur, peritior aliis plerisque esset. Tarsum inde ad Paulum quærendum profectus, eum ibi inventum Antiochiam duxit, ubi amplius annum unâ commorati, tam multos ad fidem Christianam converterunt, ut Antiochiæ Jesu discipuli Christiani primum vocarentur. Multa de Barnaba, si tempus sineret, dici possent; sed quid postremò de eo factum sit, non pro certo scimus, ii enim historici qui eum Salamine lapidibus co-opertum esse volunt, tales non sunt ut eorum auctoritatî credi possit.

1. *Cômes* — "Companion, fellow-traveller."
2. *Divitiasque habuisse* — XXVIII. 4.
3. *Arbitrio* — XLIV. 5.
4. *Amplexi essent; predicate in rel. clause.*
- Indies, not quotidie* — XLVIII. 7.
5. *Quâ homines loquebantur* — CLII.
6. *Multa.* *Little, more is said—Pauca, plura dicuntur.*
7. *Lapidibus co-opertum esse; this phrase is varied in CCIV. 6.*

## CCXIV.

Dominus noster, quum multitudo hominum qui undique ad eum audiendum convenerunt major esset quam quæ in domo ullâ contineri posset, ad Lacum Gennesareticum recessit; populumque in littore stantem allocutus est ex nave,

quam credi licet eum ingressum esse quo melius audiri viderique posset. Inter docendum, compluribus similitudinibus ostendit, quam varii futuri essent effectus evangelii pro diversis eorum, quibus prædicaretur, ingeniis. Turbâ dispersâ, discipuli, quum soli cum magistro suo essent, eum interrogarunt cur tam obscuro uteretur sermone quem nemo intelligeret, et similitudine satoris percussi, ab eo petierunt ut eam sibi explicaret. Adversarii sanctæ religionis nostræ in dubium vocarunt, num sapienter recteque fecerit Servator noster, qui coram multitudine tam obscurè sit locutus; sed quæ ita obijciuntur nihil ponderis habent, et si tempus haberemus, ad ea facilè respondere possemus. Ita, quis est qui rem considerat, qui non videat Judæos eo tempore præjudicatis opinionibus tam plenos fuisse ut laturo non fuissent quemquam qui iis planè diceret Messiam non ideo venisse ut gentes vi armisque subigeret sed ut homines in Dei favorem restitueret atque ad sanctitatem vitæ adduceret; cito abolitum iri religionem Judaicam aliique omnino diversæ concessuram; et contemptos ethnicos cum Judæis æquatum iri?

1. *Dominus noster*—XVI. 1. So *discipuli* below. 2. *Intelligeret*; the sentiment attributed to the *disciples* by the subj.; the indic. would make the *writer* say that no one understood it. 3. *Quæ ita obijciuntur*—XCIII. 4. *Qui rem considerat* is merely explanatory; the *predicate* lies in the following clause, *qui non videat*. *Quis est qui rem consideret* would mean "who is there that considers the matter, i.e., there is no one who considers"—§ 50-2.

### CCXV.

Jesus, ab uno ex discipulis suis proditus, ad concilium Judaicum est adductus, ubi, quum se Dei filium esse declarasset, morte dignus judicatus est. Judæis, quum eo tempore Romanorum imperio parerent, non permissum est ut capitis poenam sumerent, ideoque rem ad Pilatum, provinciæ procuratorem, referre coacti sunt, qui, quum eorum criminationes audisset atque Jesum interrogasset, professus est se omnino credere innocentem eum esse. Quum tamen Judæi instarent ut moreretur et criminationes etiam vehementius redintegrarent, Pilatus causam totam ad Herodem, Galilææ Tetrarcham, reject; declaravitque nec se sententiam mutasse, nec rem aliter Herodi ac sibi videri. Pilato tamen non fuit ea constantia ut populi clamoribus resisteret; et tandem condemnatus est Jesus ut in crucem ageretur. Christi mors, etsi ita effecta est, ab eo sua sponte tolerata est ad expianda hominum peccata; et memoria rei, ex ipsius præcepto, a Christianis in sacramento coenæ celebratur.

1. *Procurator*—"One who rules by authority delegated from another."
2. *Referre*. *Ferre rem ad populum*—"To lay a matter before the people;" but, *Referre rem ad senatum*—"To lay a matter before the senate." Obs. *Rejicio* used below for "referred," where Pilate, as it were, "threw back" the case. 3. *Ipsius*—§ 11. 4. *Sacramentum*, in classical writers, signifies "the oath taken by soldiers when they enlisted," to the effect that they would obey their general, not desert, &c.

## CCXVI.

Marthæ et Mariæ, duabus sororibus, quarum Martha major natu fuisse videtur, ex eo quod ejus nomen semper prius commemoratur, aliquoties contigit honor ut Jesum, quum Bethaniæ esset, hospitio exciperent. Quondam, quum Jesus ad earum domum ivisset, Martha, quæ operam navaverat, ut quam optimam posset coenam pararet, divino hospiti quæstæ est sororem suam otiosam ad ejus pedes sedentem sibi unitotum laborem curamque res domesticas administrandi reliquisse. Jesus eam leniter objurgavit dixitque sibi melius placere Mariæ cupiditatem ut erudiretur, quam Marthæ nimiam sollicitudinem mensam instruendi. Postea, quum Lazarus earum frater ægrotaret, nuncium ad Jesum miserunt, expectantes ut statim veniret eumque sanaret. Jesus tamen moratus est quoad Lazarus non solum mortuus sed etiam sepultus est; et duarum sororum Martha, quum ei advenienti prior obviam facta esset, se credere professa est, si adfuisset Jesus, futurum non fuisse ut frater suus moreretur. Jesus promisit ejus fratrem resurrecturum esse; adjiciens se ipsum esse resurrectionem et vitam, et eos qui sibi fidem haberent, a morte ad vitam æternam revocatum iri. Inter hoc colloquium Maria adfuit et Jesus ad tumultum cum iis progressus, Lazarum e mortuis excitavit.

1. *Ex eo quod*—"From the circumstance that." This arises from their not attending—*Hoc ex eo oritur quod non attendunt*. From being Cardinal he was made Pope—*Ex Cardinali Papa* (or *Pontifex maximus*) factus est. 2. *Prius*—"First (of two)." 3. *Hospiti*, or *Apud hospitem*. *Obviam* (adv.) facta esset. They went out to meet him—*Obviam ei prodierunt*. Come to meet me—*Obviam mihi veni*. They sent a letter to meet him as he was coming—*Litteras obvias* (adj.) *ei venienti miserunt*. To meet with a repulse—*Repulsam ferre*. Brutus's evil demon said that it would meet him the next day at Philippi—*Bruti malus genius dixit se ei postero die Philippiis occursurum esse*. 5. *Adfuit*. He appeared in public—*In publicum prodit*. He did not make any public appearance—*Non in publicum prodit*. "Disappear" is made in Lat. variously; thus, Romulus disappeared—*Romulus nusquam apparuit*. The storm has disappeared—*Tempesta abiit*. His threats have disappeared—*Ejus minæ evanuerunt*. The dew disappears with the sun—*Ros abit cum sole*.



## CCXVII.

Rachaba, mulier quæ Hierichunte habitavit, speculatores qui eò ab Josua missi erant hospitio excepit occultavitque. In nostra literarum sacrarum interpretatione hæc meretrix appellatur; sed præterquam quod verbum Hebraicum quod ita est redditum ambiguum est, variæ sunt res ad historiam ipsam pertinentes, quæ faciant ut difficile sit credi eam tam perditis moribus fuisse, quam vox Anglica significat. Sive tamen ita infamis fuit, sive tantummodo tabernam diversoriam habuit, speculatores semel sub tectum suum admissos prodere noluit, quanquam vix ingressi erant, quum rex certior de re factus est eosque statim dedi jussit. Rachaba regis nunciis dixit venisse profecto advenas duos, qui apud se parumper morati essent, sed eos paulo ante solis occasum, quum urbis januæ clauderentur, abiisse; et, quum nondum longe progredi potuissent, facile esse eos assequi. Tum speculatores per funem ex fenestra demisit (quum domus ejus in muro urbis sita esset), atque in partes contrarias amandavit atque in quas regis nuncii profecti erant; quum prius jurejurando eos obstrinxisset, quum Israelitæ urbe potiti essent, sibi, quæ vitæ suæ periculo eos servasset, et omnibus qui domi suæ essent parsum iri. Factum Rachabæ, quæ mendacium deditâ operâ dixerit, profecto non est laudandum; sed fides ejus quâ adducta est ut hospitium speculatoribus præberet quum ceteri Hierichuntis incolæ increduli infestique manerent, merito a duobus apostolis laudibus effertur. Dignum est quod commemoretur hanc mulierem, quum postea Salmoni, principi Judæ, nupta esset, inter Davidis et Christi majores numerari.

1. *Mulier quæ*; *mulier* agrees in case with *Rachaba*; this is not quite the same idiom as that remarked on in XXV. 1, *mulier* being too important, as an explanatory word, to be drawn into the rel. and subordinate clause. 2. *Præterquam quod*, *perditis*, *moribus*, *advenas*, *contrarias*. 3. *Jurejurandum* has no plu., but *juramenta* serves to supply the deficiency. 4. *Quæ dixerit*; *quæ* assigning a reason.

## CCXVIII.

Josua unus fuit ex duodecim hominibus quos Moses ad terram Chanaanæam explorandam misit; ex quibus is et Caleb duo soli fuerunt qui Israelitas, ut in incepto perseverarent, cohortarentur; commone-facientes eos Deum ipsum recepisse se pro iis pugnaturum esse; ideoque nihil tam arduum aut formidolosum esse, ut deberet inxsuperabile videri. Cæteri

speculatores, quippe quibus deesset fides, timuerunt, difficultates in majus auxerunt, et famam ejusmodi quæ populo terrorem injiceret attulerunt; sed Josua et Caleb id fecerunt quod Deo tam placuit, ut iis solis permitteretur ut terram promissam ingrederentur, quum cæteris omnibus fatum esset in solitudine perire. Moses, aliquanto ante mortem, jussus a Deo est manus Josuæ imponere, et partem auctoritatis suæ cum eo communicare; et, Mose demortuo, totum imperium ad Josuam pervenit. Res gestæ ejus, ut ducis Israelitarum, plures sunt quam ut hic narrentur, et omnibus qui sacras literas perlegerunt bene notæ sint necesse est; sed prætermittere non possumus commemorare, eum in proelio memorabili contra quinque reges imperasse soli ut consisteret, quo commodius Israelitæ victoriam suam perficere possent, atque hoc miraculum, quo vix insignius memoriæ proditum est, factum revera esse. Magnus hicce vir, ubi sensit sibi finem vitæ adesse, tribus omnes in Shechemam convocavit, et arcam fœderis eò ferendam curavit. Deinde, quum Israelitis quæ beneficia a Deo accepissent recensuisset, eos cohortatus est ut ei obedientiam illam, quæ ei deberetur, præstarent, mortuusque est propectâ ætate centum et decem annorum. Liber qui ejus nomen fert, ita appellatur tum quod ejus facta describit tum etiam quod ab eo scriptus esse creditur. Historiam complectitur septendecim annorum, per quod temporis spatium Israelitis præfuerat. Forsitan opus sit nonnullis dici, Josuam in testamento novo Jesum vocari.

1. *Quippe quibus deesset fides*—"In as much as faith was wanting to them."
2. *Ejusmodi quæ injiceret*—"Of that sort which would inspire." These things were calculated to benefit you—*Hæc idonea fuerunt quæ tibi prodessent*. I calculated on the truth of the story—*Ratus sum fabulam esse veram*. They took up arms, calculating on their numbers—*Arma ceperunt, multitudinis suæ freti*. 3. *Fatum esset*. The city was doomed to perish—*Fatum fuit ut urbs periret*. 4. *Aliquanto ante*; so, *multo ante*, *paulo ante*, and *multo post*, *paulo post*, &c. 5. *Manus imponere*. He laid hands (or violent hands) on himself, i.e., he committed suicide—*Mortem sibi conscivit*. 6. *Quam ut*, or *quam quæ*. Quo for ut, because of the comparative commodius. 7. *Per quod temporis spatium*—XXVI. *Opus sit dici*—XLIII. 6.

## CCXIX.

Jesus, quum iter ad Galilæam faceret, per Samariam transiit, ubi, de via fessus, ad Jacobi puteum, haud procul ab urbe Sychara, consedit. Ejus discipuli interim ad urbem cibos empturi iverant; dumque hi aberant mulier Samaritana ad aquam hauriendam venit. Inter Judæos et Samaritanos intercedebat vetus et implacabile odium, a quo Jesus

omnino vacuus mulierem rogavit ut sibi aquam bibendam daret. Quæ, quum eum vel ex sermone vel vestitu Judæum esse animadverteret, præjudicatis popularium suorum opinionibus imbuta, se mirari dixit eum qui ex Judaica gente esset, beneficium a se, quæ esset Samaritana, petiisse. Jesus hanc arripuit occasionem nonnullas doctrinæ suæ partes ei impartendi; et percontanti utrum Hierosolymis an in monte Gerizimo Deus esset colendus, quâ præcipue de re controversia inter Samaritanos et Judæos fuit, respondit veram Dei notitiam in præsentia apud Judæos solos esse; sed non esse cur ea de hac re sollicita esset; quum tempus adesset quo intelligeretur non locum loco acceptiorem Deo esse; quum enim Deus esset spiritus, veros ejus cultores non eos esse qui sacra ullo certo in loco facerent, sed eos quorum religio non ficta esset quique animi cultu eum adorarent.

1. *Impertiendi*; compare *cum eo communicare* in the preceding exercise.
2. *Animadvertere aliquem*—"To perceive one." *Animadvertere in aliquem*—"To punish one."

## CCXX.

Jesu (*dat.*), Capernaum ingredienti, post finitam in planitie orationem, obvenerunt rectores quidam Judaici, qui ei dixerunt esse in urbe sua centurionem Romanum, qui magnis beneficiis gentem Judaicam obstrinxisset, ejus servum, qui gratus apud herum suum esset, tam graviter ægrotare, ut de vita ejus desperaretur; se autem missos esse oratum ut veniret Jesus eumque in valetudinem restitueret. Jesus, qui nunquam occasionem benefaciendi omisit, cum hominibus centurionis domum versus ivit; et ad eam prope pervenerant, quum alii ex centurionis amicis venerunt, dicentes eum nolle Jesu (*dat.*) laborem veniendi imponere, quum se indignum existimaret qui honore tanto afficeretur ut suam domum Jesus ingrederetur; ob hanc causam eum ausum non esse Jesum adire, sed Judæorum operâ usum esse; et eum satis scire, Jesum, quocunque in loco esset, posse, uno verbo edito, servum curare. Jesus declaravit se neminem invenisse, ne inter Judæos quidem, qui tam eximiam veramque de potestate suâ divinâ opinionem concepisset; atque adjecit multos ex ethnicis, hoc exemplum imitantes, beneficiorum quæ ipse collaturus venisset participes futuros esse, et Judæos, quibus primò oblata essent, qui tamen ea rejecissent, exclusum iri. Tum centurionis amicis dixit ut domum redirent, servumque sanatum inventuros.

1. *Magnis beneficiis obstrinxisset*—"Had bound or obliged by great acts of kindness. To be under great obligations to one—*Multum alicui debere*. The Romans were under great obligations to Cicero—*Cicero præclarè de Romanis meritus est*. He obliged me by many favours—*Me multis beneficiis obligavit*. 2. *Quum venerunt*; *quum* signifying "at the time when," and therefore the indic. 3. *Qui honore tanto afficeretur*, or *In quem tantus honor conferretur*, or *Oui deferretur* (*tribueretur*). All rose up to do him honour—*Omnes ei assurrexerunt*. He gave me his word of honour—*Mihi fidem dedit*. I appeal to your honour—*Fidem tuam appello*. 4. *Neminem . . . ne inter Judæos quidem*—§ 64. 5. *Dixit ut*, a command; *servumque*, an assertion.

## CCXXI.

Vulgo conceditur adventum Jesu Christi in pereuntem hunc orbem nostrum in annum quater millesimum quantum post mundum conditum incidere. Multa vaticinia, multo ante edita atque servata ab iis qui ejus inimici acerbissimi fuerunt, venturum eum esse denunciaverant, personam ejus describerant, de ejus miraculis, ærumnis, morte et resurrectione locuta erant, et prædixerant quid benigna ejus religio per totam terram effectura esset. Ab hoc fonte lucis salutisque profectum est novum genus auctorum, qui clarâ eâ constantique luce fulserunt quam necessarium non est dicere eos ab eo accepisse, neque ab alio ullo accipere potuisse. Notatu dignum est, etsi vera maximi momenti quæ alii memoriæ proderent communicavit, tamen apud nullum auctorem fide dignum narrari eum ipsum unquam nisi semel scripsisse, idque in pulvere; atque id quod tum scripsit ei visum non est quinquam scire. Epistola ad Agbarum, Edessæ regem, ab Eusebio aliisque Jesu attributa, est fraus a se ipsa confutata, nec digna quæ respiciatur.

1. *Conceditur*—"Allowed, granted, conceded." I allow that I was wrong—*Non nego me errasse*. 2. *Nostrum*—CXCVIII. 3. *Vaticinia edita*. To deliver a sentiment—*Ferre (dicere) sententiam*. To deliver a message—*Mandata exponere (edere)*. To deliver a letter to one—*Litteras alicui tradere*. To deliver a letter into one's hand—*Litteras alicui in manum tradere*. To deliver a speech—*Habere orationem*. 4. *Effectura esset, profectum est, notatu dignum est, apud (not in), narrari, visum est, idque*.

## CCXXII.

Inter literarum sacrarum interpretes nequaquam convenit num Marcus Evangelista idem sit atque Joannes Marcus de quo, ut alibi sic præcipuè in Actis Apostolorum, mentio fit, quique in epistola ad Colossenses Barnabæ sororis filius fuisse dicitur. Si idem fuit, filius fuit Mariæ, piæ mulieris quæ Hierosolymis habitavit ejusque in domum primi Christiani

convenire solebant. Temporibus antiquis fuerunt qui dicerent evangelium nomine Marci inscriptum ab eo ipso conditum non esse, sed, ei a Petro dictatum, Petri evangelium revera appellari debuisse; Papiam, qui primus putavit opus ab altero ad alterum transferri debere, in hac sententia secuti sunt Origenes, Irenæus, alique; etsi quæ iis causa fuerit talem ullam suspicionem habendi, non ita manifestum est. Hæc res sola non est de quâ dubitatum sit; sed hoc unum nostra pro certo scire interest, librum divinæ auctoritatis esse.

1. *Convenit, idem atque, non ita manifestum, hoc unum, nostra interest.*
2. *Pius* has three meanings—"Pious," in reference to the Deity; "Dutiful," to one's parents; "Patriotic," to one's country. So, "*Pietas*"—"Piety, dutifulness, patriotism."

## CCXXIII.

Rex Syriæ qui nomen Seleuci Quartus gessit, cognomine Philopatoris vulgo internoscitur; et quæ Josepho causa fuerit eum Soterem vocandi, haud facile est dictu. Regni sui initio Judæis favit, et omnia quæ potuit fecit, ut sibi animos eorum conciliaret; sed grandem pecuniam Romanis quotannis pendere coactus, quum audivisset esse in ærario Hierosolymis pecuniam, ea potiri statuit, et Heliodorum, servorum quos habuit fidelissimum, misit, qui eam totam asportaret. Heliodorus, quum Hierosolyma pervenisset, Oniam sacerdotem adiit, cui putavit se posse sine vi persuadere ut thesaurum traderet. Onias dixit esse in templo quadringenta talenta argenti, et auri ducenta, quorum pars major viduarum parentibusque orborum esset, et nihil, si ipse prohibere posset, ablatum iri.

1. *Qui quartus and servorum quos habuit fidelissimum*—§ 34.
2. *Dictu*—VIII. 1. *Adiit.*

## CCXXIV.

Apollos fuit Judæus Alexandrinus, in sacris literis bene versatus magnaue eloquentia præditus. Ab Joanne baptizatus est, et quum Jesum esse Messiam persuasissimum ipse haberet, magno ardore alios coepit docere, prius etiam quam plenam evangelii lucem accepit. Ephesum profectus, et audacter in synagoga de rebus divinis dixit, et accuratius ipse fide Christiana est eruditus ab Aquila ejusque uxore Priscilla, quos fortè auditores habuit. Quum postea Corinthum pervenisset, tanto adjuvento in veritate propaganda fuit, ut Paulus eum

læte acciperet, et confiteretur quam utilis esset ejus opera in iis quæ ipse sevisset irrigandis. Dissensio, quæ primo incommoda ecclesiæ futura esse videbatur, inter discipulos Apollo Paulique exorta est, quum utrique primas doctori suo vindicarent; sed duces adeo non participes hujus certaminis fuerunt, ut nulli duo homines conjunctius viverent.

1. *Alexandrinus*—XLVII. 1. 2. *De rebus divinis dixit*; "preached" being used absolutely; but, He preached the gospel—*Evangelium prædicavit*. 3. *Primas*. This was in fact allowing him a tacit superiority—*Hoc revera fuit ei primas tacitè partes deferre*.

## CCXXV.

Quum Augustus in Rhodo insula esset, inter eos qui ad eum iverunt, petentes ut ad colloquium admitterentur, fuit Herodes Magnus, qui, ne arrogans videretur, vestes suas regias deposuit, sed eam loquendi libertatem, quâ regem uti decebat, servavit. Dixit se conaturum non esse quidquam celare, et primò confessus est se in bello civili Antonio favisse, et auxilium ei laturum fuisse, nisi copiæ quæ in potestate sua fuerint, mittendæ omnes fuissent contra Arabes, quorum nefariis conatibus non potuerit non resistere. "Si," inquit, "tu, qui, ut res evenerunt, nullam a me injuriam accepisti, me dignum jam existimabis, qui inter amicos tuos numerer, invenies mihi tuto credi posse."

1. *Regias, deposuit, decebat, celare*.

## CCXXVI.

Daniel, unus ex Judæ principibus ultimusque quatuor vatum majorum, admodum juvenis ad superbam Babylonem captivus abductus est, anno mundi ter millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo octavo, sexcentis sex annis ante Christum natum. Ibi nomen ei in Belteshazzarem mutatum est; quumque Nebuchadnezzaris regis somnium de statua mystica explicasset, tantam adeptus est famam, ut, ex servo, ad locum excelssimum celeriter proveheretur, totiusque urbis imperium et potestas alia ei committerentur. Vaticinia ejus de Chaldaico, Persico, Græco, et Romano imperiis, atque de Messiæ adventu, ut alia omittam, tam accurate et definite exprimuntur, ut hæc prædicta omnino non possint ad alia ulla eventa referri. Babylone vel saltem alicubi in Chaldea mortuus esse videtur quum ei visum non sit veniâ uti a Cyro Judæis data ut ad patriam suam redirent.

1. *Ultimus*—XCIV. 2. *Ad necessary* because of the adj. *superbam*. 3. *Ex servo*—CCXVI. 1. 3. *Omnino non possint*—"Are altogether not able." 5. *Eventa, referri, saltem, visum sit, uti*.

## CCXXVII.

Michæas vulgo creditur is vates fuisse qui habitu mutato ivit ad Achabum regem objurgandum quod Benhadadum Syriæ regem evadere passus esset. Triennio post, anno mundi ter millesimo centesimo septimo, et octingentis nonaginta septem annis ante Christum, Achabus, quum eidem Benhadado bellum iterum inferre decrevisset, ab Josaphato, Judæ rege, ut sese in expeditionem comitaretur petivit. Josaphatus cum eo ire consensit, sed se falsis Baalis vatibus diffidere significavit, vatemque Jehovæ consuli voluit. Achabus invitus consensit ut Michæas arcesseretur; sed dixit hunc esse hominem quem odio haberet, quum semper mala de se vaticinaretur. Michæas, quum pervenisset, regem ire jussit dixitque omnia ei prosperè cessura esse. Achabus, eum per ironiam loqui cernens, eum obtestatus est ut sibi vera diceret; et tum Michæas prædixit regem in proelio casurum esse populumque duce orbatum dissipatum iri. Achabus, etsi ei ut liberè loqueretur institerat, tamen iis quæ dixit adeo irritatus est, ut juberet eum in carcerem conjici et ea solum quæ ad vitam sustentandam necessaria essent ei suppeditari. Omnia quæ vates prædixerat, evenerunt; sed quid de eo factum sit ignotum est.

1. *Habitu mutato*—CLV. 2. *Objurgandum, evadere, consensit, consuli, invitus.* 3. *Arcesseretur.* He sent to the continent for books—*Libros a continente arcessivit.* 4. *Omnia ei prosperè cessurâ esse*—"That all things would turn out (*yield*) prosperously for him." The Romans were successful in Africa—*Romani rem bene in Africa gesserunt.* This stratagem succeeded—*Hic dolus processit.* He informed them of his success—*Eos de successu suo certiores fecit.* Here he was no less successful—*Hic rem non minùs prosperè gessit.*

## CCXXVIII.

Nathan vates vir conspicuus fuit tempore Davidis regis apud quem magnam habuit auctoritatem. De eo mentio in sacris literis primum fit eo tempore quo David templum Deo ædificare constituerat, quod consilium communicavit cum Nathane, qui ejus propositum probavit, sed postea jussus est ei dicere Deum ejus filio et successorì eum honorem reservasse. Aliquot post annis, quum David graviter peccasset, Nathan ad eum objurgandum missus est; difficilique hoc munere prudentia singulari functus est. Dicendo divitem quendam, gregi suo parcentem, vicinum pauperem unicâ agnâ spoliasse, e rege facti sui improbationem elicit; nam simul ac David fabulam audit, exclamavit eum qui ita fecisset dig-

num esse qui moreretur. Ubi Salomon natus est, Nathani negotium iterum datum est ut Dei mandata ad Davidem deferret; et verisimile est Davidem hoc tempore certiores esse factum Salomonem sibi in regnum successurum esse; eum templum ædificaturum, et promissorum sibi datorum hæredem fore. Quum David grandis natu infirmusque esset, atque Adonias, quartus ejus filius, animos populi sibi conciliare conaretur, ut ipse, quum David mortuus esset, rex fieret, Nathan Salomonis matri suasit ut Davidi instaret ut sine morâ successorem constitueret; et statim Salomon rex renunciatus est. Nathan varios scripsit libros, qui omnes jam deperditi sunt. Si historiam Salomonis regni condidit, ad maximam ætatem vixerit necesse est.

1. *Vir conspicuus, apud quem habuit auctoritatem, quod consilium, negotium datum est, mandata.* 2. *Ædifico*—XXII. Rome was not all built in one day—*Roma omnis non uno die ædificata est*; the building or founding (*condo*) might be accomplished in one day, but the completion of the process of building (*ædifico*) could not.

## CCXXIX.

Miltonus inter alia quæ commemorat ut Salmasium adversarium suum ridiculum faciat, dicit eum a muliere quam uxorem suam appellaret, quæ tamen moderatrix ejus potius appellanda esset, tam diu et tam asperè gubernatum esse, ut videretur non posse quidquam sine ejus auctoritate suscipere. Hoc aliquâ ex parte verum fuisse colligi ex eo potest quod a scriptore æquali dictum est qui de Salmasii uxore loquens eam appellavit Junonem, quam bene notum (est) dearum omnium imperiosissimam fuisse et Jovis ipsius voluntati sæpe restitisse. Sunt qui putent eam ex miti morosam factam esse quum suâ liberorumque suorum causâ sedem novam rogasset nec permissum ei esset ut Lugduno Batavorum discederet.

1. *Moderator*—masc.; *moderatrix*—fem.; so *victor*, *victrix*; and *ultor*, *ultrix*, &c.; *auctor* can be used with reference either to a masc. or fem. noun. 2. *Æqualis* and *proprius* govern the dat. of the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu* *sui*; but the gen. of other words. He was contemporary with me—*Fuit æqualis mihi*, or *æqualis meus*. Theseus was contemporary with Sisyphus—*Theseus æqualis fuit Sisyphi*. 3. *Ex miti morosam factam esse*—CCXVI. 1.

## CCXXX.

IV. Non. Septembr. anno millesimo sexcentesimo sexto, memorabile illud incendium Londini exarsit, quod per quatuor dies et quatuor noctes sæviit, et prope quinque sextas partes totius urbis delevit. Parkerus, qui eo tēpore præ-



ter alia ædificia, amplius tredecim millia domuum privatarum et circiter nonaginta templa consumpta esse; vix ullam partem intra muros esse servatam, et extra portas incendium tam late vagatum esse, ut excidium describi non posset. Unde incendium ortum sit, nunquam deprehensum est; variæque de hac re sententiæ sunt habitæ. Alii id fortuito accidisse putarunt; sed alii ab incendiariis inceptum promotumque esse suspicati sunt.

1. *Quinque sextas partes*—§ 7. *Eo tempore*—§ 1. *Præter*—X. 3. 2. *Describi non posset*. Beyond expectation—*Præter* or *supra spem*. To go beyond belief—*Excedere fidem*.

### CCXXXI.

Joannes Evangelista Bethsaidæ, in oppido Galilææ, natus est, ubi cum patre et fratre suo artem piscatoris coluit. Quum ab Jesu, ut suus discipulus fieret, vocatus est, ad ætatem sex et viginti annorum non pervenerat; et vulgo creditur apostolorum omnium minimus natu fuisse, etsi confitendum est hoc non posse pro certo sciri. Etsi nec doctus nec nobilis (tamen), sacras literas, quæ singulis hebdomadibus in Synagoga legebantur, intellexit, ita ut colligere posset Jesum esse Servatorem promissum; et rogatus ut sese ei jungeret hominumque piscator esset, non dubitavit retia sua relinquere eumque per omnia ejus itinera sequi. Unus fuit ex tribus illis quos Jesus in maximam familiaritatem recepit; eique tantopere fautum est et tantopere est honoratus, ut insigne nomen acciperet "discipuli quem Jesus amavit."

1. *Bethsaidæ, in oppido*—XXXVII. 1. 2. *Suus*, because *quum ab Jesu vocatus est* is equivalent to *Quum Jesus eum vocavit*, and "His" thus refers to the subject of the principal verb. 3. *Sex et viginti*, or *Viginti sex*—§ 4, c. 4. *Singulis hebdomadibus*—"Weekly, every week," there being no adv. with this meaning. So, hourly. *Singulis horis*—"Each, or every hour." But yearly—*Quotannis*; daily—*Quotidie*. *Tribus illis*—§ 1. 5. *Tantopere* is repeated because the verbs, being of different syntax, are not so closely coupled that it could be understood with the second. Had the English been "So highly was he loved and honoured," we could say *Tantopere dilectus et honoratus est*. With this may be compared the following sentence:—He was the first to condemn Livy and admire Justin—*Primus Livium contempsit primusque Justinum admiratus est*.

